

1 would find in the specification that says any one of these
2 regimens should be used or called out to be used with DME or
3 diabetic retinopathy?

4 A. No.

5 Q. When it came to your testimony that you provided here
6 in court today, did you assume that you had to find an example
7 in order to find enablement or written description?

8 A. No, I didn't.

9 Q. Let's go back, then, to the press release, which was
10 DTX 3198. And let's go to the second page of the exhibit.

11 And let's call up the description of the VEGF
12 Trap-Eye in Phase II development paragraph.

13 Now, I believe you indicated that what was written on
14 the page for the first indication that involved an eight-week
15 dosing regimen was what? 2 milligrams every eight weeks after
16 three monthly loading doses?

17 A. The first one was 2 milligram monthly and then
18 2 milligram every eight weeks after three monthly loading doses
19 was the second option.

20 Q. Now, even if there's no express recitation of the
21 number five there, does the prn dosing regimen permit dosing
22 that would include five monthly loading doses in the context of
23 this regimen?

24 A. You could happen upon a scenario where five loading
25 doses are given through the course of using a prn approach.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

JAY M. STEWART, MD - REDIRECT

1 Q. And would that prn regimen also permit, then, those
2 five loading doses being followed by an eight-week dosing
3 regimen?

4 A. It could be if that's how circumstances played out
5 for that particular patient.

6 MS. MAZZOCHI: Nothing further, Your Honor. Thank
7 you.

8 THE COURT: Recross?

9 MR. GREGORY: Nothing further, Your Honor.

10 THE COURT: Any exhibits we need to tidy up with the
11 doctor?

12 MR. GREGORY: None from us, sir.

13 THE COURT: Are the stack that was in the binder part
14 of the record, or are you satisfied just --

15 MR. GREGORY: We are satisfied. We don't need to
16 move them into evidence.

17 THE COURT: All right. Understood.

18 Any other exhibits from defense standpoint, then.

19 MS. MAZZOCHI: Your Honor, because so many of what
20 was in the stack I've never seen before, let me -- can I just
21 have -- to see if I need to put them in the record for this
22 witness just to make sure that the Court has context and
23 completeness. But, otherwise, we don't have anything further.
24 But we'll clean that up tomorrow morning if that's all right.

25 THE COURT: Understood.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 MS. MAZZOCHI: Thank you.

2 THE COURT: Doctor, thank you. You can step down.
3 You can leave all the documents up there. Someone will tidy
4 those up. Thank you, sir.

5 If I could ask counsel to grab whatever's up here,
6 whomever it belongs to.

7 While we're doing that, Mylan may call its next
8 witness.

9 If everyone has finished rotating and whatnot,
10 Counsel, you may call your next witness.

11 MR. SALMEN: Thank you, Your Honor. Heinz Salmen on
12 behalf of defendants Mylan and Biocon. We call Dr. Gregory
13 MacMichael as our next witness.

14 THE COURT: Doctor, if you would come all the way to
15 the front.

16 You may proceed, Counsel.

17 MR. SALMEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

18 **GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD, DEFENDANTS' WITNESS, SWORN**

19 DIRECT EXAMINATION

20 BY MR. SALMEN:

21 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. MacMichael.

22 A. Good afternoon.

23 Q. Would you please introduce yourself to the Court.

24 THE WITNESS: Your Honor, my name is Greg MacMichael.

25 THE COURT: Good afternoon, sir.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 BY MR. SALMEN:

2 Q. Dr. MacMichael, are you here testifying on behalf of
3 Mylan and Biocon?

4 A. Yes, I am.

5 Q. And did you prepare a set of demonstrative slides to
6 assist with your testimony today?

7 A. Yes, I did.

8 Q. Okay.

9 If we could pull up DDX 8 on the screen.

10 And I believe you've been provided a binder and a
11 printout of these slides. Dr. MacMichael, are these the slides
12 that you prepared?

13 A. Yes, they are.

14 Q. Dr. MacMichael, where are you from?

15 A. I'm from New Jersey.

16 Q. And turning to your demonstrative slide, DDX 2, on
17 the screen, will you please provide the Court with a summary of
18 your educational background.

19 A. Yes. I went to Penn State to get a bachelor's degree
20 in microbiology. Subsequent to that, I went to North Carolina
21 State University to get a master's degree in microbiology and
22 biochemistry focusing on the use of -- I went to North Carolina
23 State to get my master's degree in microbiology and
24 biochemistry with a focus on the use of bacteria to break down
25 hazardous wastes and degrade oil spills.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. What was your doctoral thesis in?

2 A. Yes. I got my PhD in microbiology and biochemistry
3 at Mississippi State University, again working on the use of
4 bacteria for the cleanup of hazardous waste and oil spills.

5 Q. After receiving your doctorate from Mississippi State
6 University in 1984, where did you begin your career?

7 A. Yeah. My first job after college was working at a
8 company called Techne.

9 Q. And will you please summarize for the Court your
10 professional experience at Techne.

11 A. Yes. At Techne I was working with an individual
12 named Norman Burney, who also was a famous innovator. And
13 together we worked on the development of bioreactors for
14 growing up animal cells to produce therapeutic proteins.

15 Q. How many years were you at Techne?

16 A. Six years.

17 Q. After your six years at Techne, where did you
18 continue your career?

19 A. I moved over to Centocor and was the assistant
20 director of cell culture research and development.

21 Q. What was the focus of your work at Centocor?

22 A. It was focused on developing high-cell-density,
23 high-volumetric productivity processes for making monoclonal
24 antibodies.

25 Q. Will you please explain to the Court what a

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 monoclonal antibody is.

2 A. Yes. As you're developing a therapeutic, you will
3 basically genetically modify numerous cells, and then you will
4 look to see which one was the highest level of productivity.
5 You will then pick that specific clone that was obtained from
6 that one cell, and thus the term "monoclonal antibody."

7 Q. Did you have any notable achievements during your
8 time at Centocor?

9 A. Yes, I did.

10 Q. And can you describe for the Court, please.

11 A. Yes. I developed the high-density upstream processes
12 for Centoxin, the first monoclonal ever approved, Remicade, and
13 ReoPro.

14 Q. And were those FDA-approved medications?

15 A. They were all FDA-approved medications.

16 Q. And what type of drug product is Centoxin?

17 A. Centoxin is a immunoglobulin M for the treatment of
18 sepsis.

19 Q. What were your primary contributions to the
20 development of Centoxin?

21 A. Developing the high cell density processes, doing the
22 tech transfer into manufacturing, and supporting the
23 manufacturing efforts.

24 Q. What type of drug product is Remicade?

25 A. Remicade is an IgG monoclonal antibody for the

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 treatment of autoimmune disorder.

2 Q. What were your primary contributions to the
3 development of the Remicade product?

4 A. Again, developing high cell density, high volumetric
5 productivity processes for the manufacturing of Remicade.

6 Q. And turning to the ReoPro product, what type of drug
7 product is ReoPro?

8 A. ReoPro is a subclass of a monoclonal. It's a
9 fragment, called Fab -- fragment of an antibody is called a
10 Fab -- and it was actually a fusion protein. It was part
11 human, part mouse.

12 Q. Can you describe to the Court what your primary
13 contributions were to the development of ReoPro?

14 A. Again, my focus was on the upstream processes to
15 develop high productivity to be able to meet market demand.

16 Q. After your time at Centocor, I see you moved on to
17 Chiron. Why did you make the move to Chiron?

18 A. Yes. My supervisor, the head of development at
19 Centocor, moved over to Chiron to be the senior vice president
20 of development and manufacturing. He asked if I would join him
21 at Chiron, and I became the director of production in vaccines
22 development in St. Louis.

23 Q. What was the focus of your work at Chiron?

24 A. It was developing subunit vaccines in a cell line
25 called Chinese hamster ovarian cells.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Will you please explain to the Court what a Chinese
2 hamster ovarian, or CHO, cell is.

3 A. Yes. In the production of various therapeutic
4 proteins, they use animal cells. A Chinese hamster ovarian
5 cell was proved to be a very robust cell line, reached high
6 levels of cell density and productivity, and also had more
7 favorable what we call glycosylation patterns.

8 Q. Can you expand on that? What is a glycosylation
9 pattern?

10 A. Yes. Inside each of our cells, there's a whole set
11 of machinery that synthesizes proteins. And after the primary
12 protein is synthesized, the cells then can further -- what's
13 called posttranslational modification. They can modify those
14 cells by putting sugars on those cells to change the
15 performance in the bloodstream.

16 Q. Dr. MacMichael, did you invent the glycosylation
17 pattern for the proteins you were working on?

18 A. No. Every cell in the human body has the ability to
19 glycosylate proteins.

20 Q. And what notable achievements did you have at Chiron?

21 A. At Chiron we produced -- we developed multiple
22 vaccines, but one of most interest would be hepatitis B vaccine
23 where I led the global team, which included a clinical,
24 regulatory, and manufacturing and development, and basically
25 developed a new formulation for that vaccine.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Let me follow up on that, Dr. MacMichael. Were you
2 overseeing the formulation activities during that development?

3 A. Yes, I was.

4 Q. After Chiron, I see you moved over to Eli Lilly in
5 1997. Why did you make the move to Lilly?

6 A. Yes. Eli Lilly was trying to develop a product
7 called Xigris, activated protein C produced in HEK293 cell
8 line, but they lacked the internal experience of how to grow
9 those cells at high cell density. So they recruited me in to
10 help them develop the process.

11 Q. What was your title at Lilly?

12 A. Senior director of development.

13 Q. What type of drug products were you working on at
14 Lilly? What was your focus?

15 A. The focus was on therapeutic proteins.

16 Q. Will you please describe to the Court some of your
17 notable achievements at Lilly.

18 A. Yes. Probably the two more notable achievements was
19 the successful development and registration of Xigris,
20 activated protein C for the treatment of sepsis; and
21 additionally the development of truncated parathyroid hormone,
22 known as Forteo, for the treatment of osteoporosis.

23 Q. Were those drugs approved by any regulatory
24 authorities?

25 A. They were approved by the FDA and the EMA.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. I see you continued your career at Wyeth. What was
2 your title at Wyeth?

3 A. At Wyeth I was vice president of vaccines
4 development.

5 Q. And I see you have a couple drug names listed here on
6 Slide 3 of DDX 8. What are those drugs that you were referring
7 to?

8 A. They're probably two of my more notable
9 accomplishments while at Wyeth. Prevnar 13 is a pneumococcal
10 vaccine that vaccinates against 13 different types of
11 pneumococcal pneumonia.

12 Q. Let me ask a follow-up to that, Dr. MacMichael. What
13 was your contribution to the development of the Prevnar 13
14 formulation?

15 A. Yes. I had responsibilities from cell line
16 development through upstream process development, purification
17 and final formulation and the development of the analytical --
18 of the assays required for in process and release testing.

19 Q. Did you contribute to the stable formulation for the
20 Prevnar 13?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And how did you achieve a stable formulation in
23 Prevnar 13?

24 A. Yes. Initially, we found that, heading into Phase I
25 clinical trials, the vials -- just vibration in the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 refrigerators was sufficient agitation to cause some undesired
2 aggregation. We addressed that by adding Pluronic -- by adding
3 polysorbate 80 to prevent the aggregation.

4 Q. The second product on your list at Wyeth is FluMist.
5 What type of drug product is FluMist?

6 A. FluMist is a more advanced version of the annual flu
7 vaccine that many of us get. The difference with FluMist is
8 it's -- actually, the virus is not inactivated; so it elicits a
9 better immune response. It's sprayed up the nose, and it
10 cannot grow in the lungs. So it gets a very good immune
11 response protecting the recipient against the flu.

12 Q. Dr. MacMichael, what was the general time frame for
13 your work on the Prevnar 13 and FluMist formulation?

14 A. 2002 through 2008.

15 Q. I see you next were the senior vice president of
16 development and manufacturing at Cook Pharmica in 2008.

17 What was the focus of your work at Cook?

18 A. Cook was a contract development and manufacturing
19 organization. That is, we didn't have our own products; we
20 developed and manufactured the products for our clients.

21 Q. And then in 2010 you moved on to Novartis as global
22 head of biologics. What was the focus of your work at
23 Novartis?

24 A. My focus at Novartis was the development activities
25 required to bring the biologic pipeline in Novartis, which

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 included cell line development, upstream process development,
2 purification, final formulation development, and the analytics
3 required for all of those activities.

4 Q. Thank you, Dr. MacMichael.

5 If we turn to Slide 4 of DDX 8, can you describe to
6 the Court what you have illustrated here on Slide 4.

7 A. This is a summary of some of the products that we
8 touched on. These are eight products that I successfully
9 developed and supported the registration and the interactions
10 with the FDA and EMA.

11 Q. Let me ask about that, Dr. MacMichael. In your over
12 30 years of industry experience, did you gain experience on the
13 regulatory side of product development?

14 A. Yes, I did.

15 Q. Can you describe that experience briefly.

16 A. Yes. To bring these types of molecules successfully
17 forward, you have numerous interactions with the FDA and the
18 EMA. It also requires an understanding of how to construct the
19 various submissions that are required for successful
20 registration.

21 Q. Dr. MacMichael, are you still active in the
22 pharmaceutical industry?

23 A. Yes, I am. I founded my own consultancy called
24 CMC Bioservices.

25 Q. And what types of companies do you generally consult

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 for?

2 A. I consult in the pharmaceutical industry everything
3 from a large pharma company down to small startups.

4 Q. What technical areas do you generally consult in?

5 A. My focus is on therapeutic proteins, vaccines, and
6 cell and gene therapies, from development of cell lines all the
7 way down through the final drug product.

8 Q. Last question on your background Dr. MacMichael.
9 Using your own words, how would you describe your areas of
10 expertise?

11 A. Yeah. My expertise -- CMC stands for chemistry
12 manufacturing control is the term we used for doing process
13 development and manufacturing. My expertise starts with cell
14 line development, and the cell lines that produce therapeutic
15 proteins are put down in vials called cell banks. We do a cell
16 line selection for the highest producer.

17 Subsequent to that, we develop across the upstream
18 process, grow the cells up, and produce the desired protein.
19 We then need to purify it. And then subsequent to having it
20 purified in what we call bulk. It is then formulated into the
21 final vial.

22 So in many ways, I have responsibilities from vial to
23 vial, is one way to put it.

24 Q. Is that vial to vial illustrated on Slide 6 of DDX 8?

25 A. Yes, it is.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Dr. MacMichael, I see you've cited DTX 7087, pages 1
2 through 6. There's a copy of it in your binder, but we could
3 also show that on the screen for you.

4 Is this a copy of your current CV?

5 A. Yes, it is.

6 MR. SALMEN: Your Honor, we move to admit DTX 7087
7 into evidence.

8 THE COURT: Any objection?

9 MR. BERL: No objection.

10 THE COURT: Without objection, so admitted.

11 (DTX 7087 was admitted.)

12 MR. SALMEN: And at this time, Your Honor, we proffer
13 Dr. Gregory MacMichael as an expert in the formulation and
14 development of therapeutic proteins.

15 THE COURT: Any voir dire or objection?

16 MR. BERL: No, Your Honor.

17 THE COURT: Without objection then, motion granted.
18 The doctor is deemed so qualified.

19 You may proceed, Counsel.

20 MR. SALMEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

21 BY MR. SALMEN:

22 Q. Dr. MacMichael, if we turn to Slide 7 of your slide
23 presentation, DDX 8, let's talk about the opinions that you
24 plan to provide to the Court today.

25 If I could first direct your attention to PTX 2, we

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 have the first page of PTX 2 here on Slide 8.

2 What is PTX 2?

3 A. PTX 2 is the '865 patent.

4 Q. And did you review and analyze the '865 patent,
5 PTX 2, in forming your opinions?

6 A. Yes, I did.

7 Q. And let's also put DTX 0030 on the screen.

8 Dr. MacMichael, did you review and consider the
9 document known as the prosecution history for the '865 patent
10 in forming your opinions?

11 A. Yes, I did.

12 Q. Turning to slide -- back to Slide 8 of DDX 8,
13 Dr. MacMichael, before we go through your opinions, let's just
14 set the stage a little.

15 Did you conduct your analysis in this case from the
16 perspective of a person of ordinary skill in the art?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And if we look at Slide 8, top callout, citing
19 DDX 2679, pages 19 to 20, MacMichael opening report, is this
20 the definition for the person of ordinary skill in the art that
21 you applied in forming your opinions?

22 A. Yes, it is.

23 Q. And I'll read that definition into the record for
24 you, Dr. MacMichael.

25 "A POSA during the relevant time period would have a

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 fairly high level of education and skill. Here, a POSA would
2 have at least a PhD in chemistry, chemical engineering,
3 biochemistry, pharmacology, or a related field, along with one
4 to two years of experience in the development and manufacture
5 of formulations of therapeutic proteins or a lower degree with
6 more practical industrial experience. A POSA would have access
7 to biologists, biochemists, physicians, pharmaceutical
8 formulators, and the like with knowledge and experience in
9 fields such as drug discovery and development and the treatment
10 of ophthalmologic conditions."

11 Dr. MacMichael, is this the definition of a person of
12 ordinary skill in the art that you applied in forming your
13 opinions?

14 A. Yes, it is.

15 Q. Dr. MacMichael, did Dr. Trout also offer for a person
16 of ordinary skill in the art?

17 A. Yes, he did.

18 Q. Do you have Dr. Trout's definition illustrated at the
19 bottom right-hand side of Slide 8 of DTX 8, citing DTX 2251,
20 page 11?

21 A. Yes, I did.

22 Q. How did Dr. Trout's definition compare to yours?

23 A. Relatively similar. Dr. Trout just had a master's
24 degree where I had suggested a PhD for the POSA. Other than
25 that, the two definitions were relatively similar.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Dr. MacMichael, would your opinions regarding the
2 '865 patent change at all if the Court were to adopt
3 Dr. Trout's definition?

4 A. No, they would not.

5 Q. Now, let's move on to our second foundational point,
6 Dr. MacMichael. Turning to Slide 9 of DDX 8, are you aware
7 that the Court issued a claim construction order regarding
8 certain terms of the '865 patent that are relevant to your
9 opinions?

10 A. Yes, I am.

11 Q. And if we look here on Slide 9, we have the Court's
12 claim construction order marked for identification at DTX 6439
13 here at page 20. I'll read this for you, Dr. MacMichael.

14 "The Court adopts Mylan's definition of 'cosolvent.'
15 It is an organic substance added to the primary solvent to
16 increase the solubility of the solute, here a VEGF antagonist."

17 Dr. MacMichael, is this the construction of the claim
18 term "cosolvent" that you applied to your analysis regarding
19 infringement and validity of the '865 patent?

20 A. Yes, it is.

21 Q. If we turn to Slide 10, please.

22 Dr. MacMichael, will you explain to the Court what
23 you have illustrated here in the bubble at the center of
24 Slide 10, DDX 8, citing DTX 6439, page 20.

25 A. Yes. I took the Court's construction for an organic

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 cosolvent and edited Claim 1. And as you see in the
2 highlighted yellow -- excuse me -- red is the insertion of the
3 Court's construct.

4 Q. And, Dr. MacMichael, is that the version of Claim 1
5 that you applied in your analysis regarding the infringement
6 inquiry?

7 A. Yes, it is.

8 Q. If we turn to Slide 11, please, of DDX 11.

9 Dr. MacMichael, will you please summarize for the
10 Court the opinions you plan to offer today regarding the
11 alleged infringement of the '865 patent against Mylan and
12 Biocon's Yesafili product.

13 A. Yes. Applying the Court's claim construction order,
14 Yesafili does not infringe on the asserted Claims 4, 7, 9, 11,
15 and 14 through 17 of the '865 patent.

16 Q. And did you form an opinion regarding whether
17 polysorbate 20 at 0.03 percent in Yesafili is an organic
18 cosolvent?

19 A. Yes, I did.

20 Q. And what was your conclusion?

21 A. My conclusion is that polysorbate 20 at 0.03 percent
22 in Yesafili is not an organic cosolvent.

23 Q. And did you form an opinion regarding whether
24 polysorbate 20 at 0.03 percent in Yesafili is increasing
25 solubility of the solute aflibercept in the Yesafili product?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes, I did evaluate.

2 Q. And what was your conclusion in that regard?

3 A. My conclusion was that polysorbate 20 at 0.03 percent
4 in Yesafili does not increase solubility of the solute
5 aflibercept.

6 Q. Dr. MacMichael, I understand that you were unable to
7 attend Dr. Trout's testimony in person. Were you nonetheless
8 able to review Dr. Trout's trial testimony as well as his
9 associated demonstratives?

10 A. Yes, I was.

11 Q. Was there any portion of Dr. Trout's testimony that
12 you want to respond to specifically during your testimony
13 today?

14 A. There's two points where I believe we disagree.

15 Q. Can you explain to the Court those two points of
16 Dr. Trout's testimony that you would like to respond to.

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. First point, please.

19 A. The first point, Dr. Trout defined inhibiting
20 aggregation as equal to increasing solubility.

21 Q. Do you agree or disagree with that testimony?

22 A. I disagree.

23 Q. And your second point, Dr. MacMichael?

24 A. The second point where I differ is reducing
25 insolubility is equivalent to increasing solubility. I

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 disagree.

2 Q. Dr. MacMichael, I would next like to talk about some
3 of the technology relevant to your opinions in this case. If
4 we could turn to Slide 13. Here on Slide 13 of DDX 8 we have
5 DTX 5172, the Bontempo reference. Dr. MacMichael, did you
6 review and consider the Bontempo reference in forming your
7 opinion?

8 A. Yes, I did.

9 Q. Will you please explain to the Court the information
10 you have identified here in Slide 13 from Bontempo that's
11 relevant to your opinions and testimony in this case.

12 A. Yes. I pulled a list of potential buffers that could
13 be used in a protein formulation.

14 Q. And that information -- does that information come
15 from page 7 of DTX 5172, Bontempo?

16 A. Yes, it does.

17 Q. If we turn to the next slide, Slide 14 -- actually,
18 I'm sorry. I forgot to ask a question.

19 Could we go back one.

20 Dr. MacMichael, can you please explain the relevance
21 of the information that you provided in the parentheses
22 following each of the listed buffers?

23 A. Yeah. The parentheses are showing the pH ranges
24 where each of these buffers would -- each one of these moieties
25 would be effective as a buffer.

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And, for example, if we look at succinate, what would
2 be the buffering range for that buffer?

3 A. A pH of 3.2 to 6.6.

4 Q. And for citrate, what would be the known buffering
5 range for a citrate buffer?

6 A. 2.1 to 6.2.

7 Q. For histidine, what would be the known buffering
8 range for a histidine buffer?

9 A. 5.5 to 6.5.

10 Q. If we turn to Slide 14, please, of DDX 8.

11 Here, Dr. MacMichael, we have Exhibit DTX 5196. This
12 is the Strickley reference. Dr. MacMichael, did you review and
13 rely on the Strickley reference?

14 A. Yes, I did.

15 Q. And please explain to the Court the teaching in
16 Strickley that you have highlighted here on Slide 14 from
17 page 2 of DTX 5196.

18 A. Yes. I pulled out Strickley's definition of a
19 cosolvent.

20 Q. And is that identified in the yellow highlighted
21 language there?

22 A. Yes, it is.

23 Q. I'll read that for you, Dr. MacMichael.

24 "Cosolvents are mixtures of miscible solvents and are
25 often used to solubilize water-insoluble drugs."

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Is that part of the information from Strickley that
2 you relied upon?

3 A. Yes, it is.

4 Q. And is this disclosure in Strickley consistent with
5 how a person of ordinary skill in the art would understand the
6 use of cosolvents in pharmaceutical formulations?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Could we turn to Slide 15, please.

9 Here on Slide 15 we have another passage from the
10 Strickley reference, DTX 5196. This time we're on page 1.

11 Dr. MacMichael, will you please explain to the Court
12 the information in Strickley that you have identified here to
13 help inform your testimony.

14 A. Yes. What's pulled out in the paragraph that's being
15 shown is examples of water-soluble organic solvents. Some of
16 the examples would be polyethylene glycol 300, polyethylene
17 glycol 400.

18 Q. And with regard to the nonionic surfactants that you
19 have highlighted there, does Strickley provide examples of
20 nonionic surfactants?

21 A. Yes, they do.

22 Q. What are a couple of the examples of nonionic
23 surfactants that you've highlighted here on Slide 15, DDX 8?

24 A. For today's discussion I highlighted polysorbate 20
25 and polysorbate 80.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Dr. MacMichael, are these descriptions from Strickley
2 of polysorbate 20, polysorbate 80, and polyethylene glycol
3 consistent with how a person of ordinary skill in the art would
4 understand and characterize those excipients?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. If we turn to Slide 16, please.

7 Here, Dr. MacMichael, we have DTX 5011. This is the
8 Akers reference. Did you review and consider the Akers
9 reference, DTX 5011?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. And will you please explain to the Court the
12 information from Akers here on page 3, DTX 5011, that you've
13 identified to help inform your testimony.

14 A. Yes. Again, it defines a cosolvent and then gives
15 additional information on how a cosolvent works in water.

16 Q. Let's break that down with the first highlighted
17 language. I'll read that for you, Dr. MacMichael.

18 "Cosolvents are used to increase the solubility of a
19 poorly soluble drug in water."

20 Is that part of the disclosure from Akers that you
21 reviewed and considered?

22 A. Yes, it is.

23 Q. And can you describe for the Court the importance of
24 the second passage from Strickley that you have here.

25 A. Yes. The second passage is showing how a cosolvent

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 changes the overall physical chemistry of the solution. And
2 the way that Akers defines it is a water-miscible cosolvent
3 operates on the principle of lowering the dielectric constant
4 property of water, thereby increasing the aqueous solubility of
5 a poorly water-soluble drug.

6 Q. If we turn to the next slide, please, Slide 17.

7 Here, Dr. MacMichael, we have DTX 5012, what's known
8 as the Ansel reference, *Ansel's Pharmaceutical Dosage Forms and*
9 *Drug Delivery Systems*. Dr. MacMichael, did you review and
10 consider DTX 5012 in forming your opinions?

11 A. Yes, I did.

12 Q. I see you have two callouts here, Dr. MacMichael,
13 both from page 12 of DTX 5012. Will you please explain to the
14 Court the information from Ansel that you've identified here to
15 help inform your testimony.

16 A. There's two things I wanted to accomplish. One was
17 the definitions of a solvent and a surfactant. Then secondly
18 to give a list of examples of potential solvents and
19 surfactants.

20 Q. Let's start with the first definition applied here
21 for solvent. I'll read that for you, Dr. MacMichael.

22 "Used to dissolve another substance in preparation of
23 a solution."

24 Dr. MacMichael, is that definition for solvent
25 consistent with how a person of ordinary skill in the art would

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 understand that excipient?

2 A. Yes, it is.

3 Q. And the second definition you've highlighted here is
4 for surfactant. I'll read that for you as well.

5 "Substances that absorb to surfaces or interfaces to
6 reduce surface or interfacial tension."

7 Dr. MacMichael, is that definition consistent with
8 how a person of ordinary skill in the art would define and
9 characterize a surfactant?

10 A. Yes, it is.

11 Q. We turn now to Slide 18, please.

12 Here on Slide 18 of DDX 8, we have what's already
13 been admitted as PTX 1817. This is the Randolph and Jones
14 reference, Dr. MacMichael.

15 Did you review and consider the Randolph and Jones
16 reference to help inform your opinions and testimony?

17 A. Yes, I did.

18 Q. And will you please explain to the Court the
19 information from Randolph and Jones that you have identified
20 here to help inform your testimony.

21 A. Yes. Again, I used the Randolph and Jones to
22 further -- give further support of the definition of a
23 surfactant as being used as a stabilizing agent in a protein
24 formulation, and they're typically nonionic.

25 Q. And let me ask you, Dr. MacMichael, what subject

1 matter did Randolph and Jones direct their focus on in this
2 chapter?

3 A. It focused on the interaction of nonionic surfactants
4 and proteins with respect to developing formulations.

5 Q. Thank you.

6 We move to just the next slide, please, Slide 19.

7 MR. SALMEN: Your Honor, if I may, at this point in
8 time I am going to have to ask to have the courtroom sealed
9 pursuant to Your Honor's previous order. We are going to be
10 getting into the details of Mylan and Biocon's Yesafili
11 product.

12 THE COURT: Understood.

13 Any objection to that from Regeneron?

14 MR. BERL: No objection.

15 THE COURT: Ladies and gentlemen, consistent with our
16 prior -- I meant to turn that off.

17 Ladies and gentlemen, consistent with our prior
18 practice, anyone who's not permitted to be in the courtroom
19 consistent with this Court's protective order entered in this
20 case, I would kindly ask you to step out, please. Thank you.

21 I would continue to ask counsel to assist the Court
22 in policing enforcement of that requirement just with a quick
23 look around.

24 THE COURT: Seeing no further objections, I'll ask
25 court security to please seal our courtroom, sir. Thank you.

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

Go right ahead, Counsel.

MR. SALMEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

(The following proceedings (1384/3 to 1416/2) were
had under seal, and are filed under separate cover.)

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 (Record unsealed.)

2 THE COURT: Counsel, if you're ready, you may
3 proceed.

4 MR. SALMEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

5 BY MR. SALMEN:

6 Q. Ready, Dr. MacMichael?

7 A. Yes, I am.

8 Q. Dr. MacMichael, have you been asked to offer an
9 opinion regarding the validity of the asserted claims of the
10 '865 patent?

11 A. Yes, I have.

12 MR. SALMEN: I just wanted to make sure we unsealed
13 the courtroom, Your Honor.

14 THE COURT: We have.

15 MR. SALMEN: Just double-checking.

16 BY MR. SALMEN:

17 Q. And, Dr. MacMichael, if we turn to Slide 41 of your
18 presentation here.

19 Will you please provide the Court with a brief
20 summary of your opinions that you plan to provide today.

21 A. Yeah. This slide shows three of my opinions.

22 Q. If we address them one at a time, have you formed an
23 opinion regarding the enablement of the '865 patent?

24 A. Yes. My first opinion was it lacks enablement. The
25 breadth of the asserted claims is not enabled by the '865

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 patent specifications.

2 Q. Will you please summarize for the Court your opinion
3 regarding the written description of the '865 patent.

4 A. My opinion is the asserted claims do not have
5 sufficient written description. The '865 patent specification
6 fails to inform the skilled person that the named inventors
7 possessed anything but a phosphate-buffered sucrose-stabilized
8 formulation.

9 Q. And then lastly, Dr. MacMichael, will you please
10 provide a summary of your opinion regarding the indefiniteness
11 inquiry of the '865 patent.

12 A. Yes. The patent's indefinite because the '865 patent
13 specification fails to inform the skilled person what suitable
14 for intravitreal administration means. That term is subjective
15 and prone to multiple interpretations.

16 Q. If we turn to Slide 42, please.

17 Here on Slide 42, Dr. MacMichael, I see you have the
18 enablement legal standard. And I'll read that for you.

19 "A claimed invention is not enabled and, therefore,
20 is not patentable when the specification does not provide a
21 sufficient description to a person of ordinary skill in the art
22 how to make and use the full scope of the claimed invention
23 without undue experimentation."

24 Dr. MacMichael, is this the standard you applied in
25 your assessment of whether the '865 patent specification

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 enables the asserted claims?

2 A. Yes, it is.

3 Q. If we turn to the next slide, Slide 43, please. Here
4 on Slide 43, Dr. MacMichael, I see you have a graphic that
5 looks like an upside-down pyramid. Can you please explain to
6 the Court what information you are trying to convey with this
7 graphic.

8 A. Yes. This graphic is showing that, as you build on
9 the -- the claims build upon one another, there should be a
10 narrowing in scope of the invention.

11 Q. And I see on the left-hand side of this Slide 43 you
12 have identified claims of the '865 patent, the referenced
13 Claims 2, 5, and 10, followed by the asserted Claims 4, 7, 9,
14 11, 14, 15, 16, and 17.

15 Let me ask, Dr. MacMichael, does this graphic on
16 Slide 43 illustrate the breadth of the asserted '865 --
17 asserted claims of the '865 patent?

18 A. No, it doesn't.

19 Q. If we turn to Slide 44, please, please explain to the
20 Court what you have illustrated here in Slide 44.

21 A. Yes. What we are seeing here, the way these claims
22 are constructed, rather than narrowing -- rather than narrowing
23 the overall claims of the invention, it actually broadens them.

24 Q. Let's break that down, Dr. MacMichael.

25 Here from Claim 5 to Claim 7 can you explain how the

1 claims compare in scope?

2 A. Yeah. All the claims that are being highlighted with
3 the word "compromises," [sic] as we know just means includes,
4 polysorbate; so it gives various examples of components that
5 could be used and potential concentrations and ranges of -- for
6 example, ranges of pH. So there's an extraordinary -- not
7 extraordinary number, but there's a large number of variables
8 that have to be worked through. And that's not clearly defined
9 within the scope of this claim.

10 Q. Thank you, Dr. MacMichael. Let's turn to your
11 enablement analysis.

12 If we turn to Slide 45.

13 Dr. MacMichael, did you apply each -- here on
14 Slide 45 we have identified the *Wands* factor. Did you apply
15 each of the *Wands* factors in forming your opinion regarding the
16 enablement of the '865 patent claims?

17 A. Yes, I did.

18 Q. And let's walk through these. If we turn to
19 Slide 46, I'd like to start at the bottom of this list with
20 *Wands* Factor 8, the breadth of the claims.

21 Dr. MacMichael, did you form an opinion regarding the
22 breadth of the '865 patent asserted claims?

23 A. Yes, I did.

24 Q. And Dr. MacMichael, will you please explain to the
25 Court the conclusions you reached regarding the breadth of the

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 claims?

2 A. Yes.

3 THE COURT: One second, Doctor.

4 Yes, Counsel?

5 MR. BERL: Objection, Your Honor. This is leading.

6 I mean, we haven't been sticklers about this, but this is
7 basically having the answers on a screen and asking him to read
8 them. That doesn't seem like an appropriate question.

9 THE COURT: Overruled at this point.

10 But it is direct examination, Counsel. Go ahead.

11 BY MR. SALMEN:

12 Q. Dr. MacMichael, let me ask the question again.

13 Will you please explain to the Court the conclusions
14 you've reached regarding the breadth of the claims.

15 A. Yes. There's different types of formulations that
16 are being cited. There's various types and concentrations of
17 the buffers. Examples are given -- citrate, succinate,
18 phosphate, histidine. However, that claim uses the word
19 "comprise." So those are examples. Multiple other buffers
20 could be, in fact, used.

21 Secondly, various types and concentrations of
22 stabilizing agents are suggested. And then various types and
23 concentrations of the organic cosolvent are also being
24 suggested. But they use the word "comprises," which leaves it
25 open-ended.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And let me ask, Dr. MacMichael, would a skilled
2 person understand that combinations of different buffers could
3 be used as well?

4 A. Yes. You could use more than one specific buffer.
5 You can use a combination, which is actually practiced to
6 achieve a desired pH.

7 Q. And under the claim language here, could combinations
8 of different stabilizing agents be used as well?

9 A. Yes, they could.

10 Q. And same question for cosolvents, could combination
11 of organic cosolvents be used here under the claim language?

12 A. Yes. In fact, we were going to use cosolvents --
13 various cosolvents could be used and examples were highlighted.

14 Q. Last question for this part, Dr. MacMichael. Now
15 that you've identified the variables in the claims with respect
16 to each of the required components of Claim 1, do the asserted
17 dependent claims sufficiently narrow this universe of
18 formulations that would lessen the burden on the person of
19 ordinary skill in the art practicing these claims?

20 A. No, they would not.

21 Q. If we turn to Slide 47, please.

22 Did you also consider and apply *Wands* Factors 4, 5,
23 6, and 7 listed here on Slide 47 on the left-hand side?

24 A. Yes, I did.

25 Q. I'll read those for you, Dr. MacMichael. *Wands*

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Factor 4, the nature of the invention. Factor 5, the state of
2 the prior art. Factor 6, the relative skill of the art. And
3 Factor 7, the predictability or unpredictability of the art.

4 Dr. MacMichael, what conclusion did you reach with
5 respect to the amount of experimentation a person of ordinary
6 skill in the art would need to practice the full scope of the
7 claims?

8 A. There would need to be a significant amount of
9 experimentation.

10 Q. Dr. MacMichael, did you identify any evidence in the
11 record that supports your opinion that the skilled person would
12 require a significant amount of experimentation?

13 A. Yes. I cite two examples that are highlighted in
14 yellow.

15 Q. So let's take those one at a time. DTX 5053, this is
16 at page 17. This is Regeneron's response to an office action.

17 Dr. MacMichael, did you review and consider this
18 document?

19 A. Yes, I did.

20 Q. And I'll read that for you.

21 "Thus, one of ordinary skill in the art, upon reading
22 Remington's, would expect to engage in significant nonroutine
23 experimentation to develop a successful formulation as claimed
24 herein."

25 Dr. MacMichael, was that some of the evidence that

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 you identified --

2 A. Yes, it is.

3 Q. -- as support for your opinion that the skilled
4 person would require additional -- undue experimentation?

5 A. Yes, it is.

6 Q. If we look at the bottom callout, DTX 4430, at
7 page 3, that's a declaration of named inventor Daniel Dix.

8 Dr. MacMichael, did you review and consider DTX 4430
9 with regard to your opinions?

10 A. Yes, I did.

11 Q. And I'll read that statement for you.

12 "Formulation of pharmaceutical preparations and
13 achieving a stable composition is not a simple or routine
14 matter."

15 Dr. MacMichael, do you agree with that statement from
16 Dr. Daniel Dix?

17 A. Yes.

18 Q. And is this part of the evidence that you reviewed
19 and considered to support your opinion that the skilled person
20 would require undue experimentation practicing the asserted
21 claims of the '865 patent?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. And, Dr. MacMichael, if we move to our next slide,
24 Slide 48, did you form an opinion regarding the amount of
25 direct -- I'm sorry.

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Did you form an opinion regarding the amount of
2 direction or guidance presented in the '865 patent
3 specification?

4 A. Yes, I did.

5 Q. And did you form an opinion regarding the presence of
6 working examples in the '865 patent specification?

7 A. Yes, I did.

8 Q. Let's start with *Wands* Factor Number 3. What
9 conclusions did you reach regarding the presence or absence of
10 working examples in the '865 patent specification?

11 A. Yeah. There were examples given from the
12 phosphate-buffered sucrose-stabilized formulations. However,
13 for the other examples -- the other areas where the term
14 "comprised" was used, there were no examples given.

15 Q. Were there any examples provided in the '865 patent
16 specification of using any other type of buffer or stabilizer
17 in a stable formulation?

18 A. I'm trying to recall. I believe it was glycol or
19 glycerol. I'm sorry.

20 Q. Let me ask a more direct question, Dr. MacMichael.
21 Does the '865 patent specification provide any
22 example that is not a phosphate-buffered solution?

23 A. No.

24 Q. Let's now look at *Wands* Factor 2, the amount of
25 direction or guidance presented.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Dr. MacMichael, what conclusions did you reach
2 regarding the amount of direction or guidance presented in the
3 '865 patent specification?

4 A. That there was insufficient guidance.

5 Q. And here on Slide 48 of DDX 8, I see you have a
6 callout from the patent, PTX 2, page 4, Column 2, lines 39 to
7 48. Will you please explain to the Court the information that
8 you've highlighted here from the patent.

9 A. Yeah. I wanted to highlight the fact that there was
10 multiple examples that are being given for some of the various
11 constituents for both -- for the stabilizing agents as well as
12 the organic cosolvent.

13 Q. And what was the purpose of highlighting the language
14 in this passage "for example, for example, or a combination of,
15 maybe," then "maybe, for example."

16 A. Because it's not specific. It's open-ended, and it
17 allows numerous components to be considered at various
18 concentrations.

19 Q. Let's turn to Slide 49.

20 Dr. MacMichael, did you form an opinion regarding the
21 final *Wands* factor listed here, *Wands* Factor Number 1, the
22 quantity of experimentation necessary?

23 A. Yes, I did.

24 Q. And what was your conclusion with respect to *Wands*
25 Factor Number 1, the quantity of experimentation necessary?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Although there would be a significant amount of
2 experimentation that would be needed, and the screen -- the
3 screening can be significant and the screening can be complex.

4 Q. Let's move on to Slide 50, please.

5 Dr. MacMichael, were you asked to provide an opinion
6 regarding the written description requirement as it applies to
7 the '865 patent?

8 A. Yes, I was.

9 Q. If we turn to Slide 51, I see here you have the legal
10 standard for a written description. I'll read that for you,
11 Dr. MacMichael.

12 "The patent must convey with reasonable clarity to
13 persons of ordinary skill in the art that, as of the filing
14 date, the inventor was in possession of the entire claimed
15 genus, not just a species of the genus."

16 Dr. MacMichael, is this the legal standard that you
17 applied in forming your opinion?

18 A. Yes, it is.

19 Q. Let me ask you the first question, Dr. MacMichael.

20 Does the '865 patent disclose a representative number
21 of species that fall within the scope of the claimed genus of
22 formulations covered by the '865 asserted claims?

23 A. No, it does not.

24 Q. How many species of the claimed genus are disclosed
25 in the '865 patent?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. I'm sorry. Please repeat your question.

2 Q. Sure.

3 How many species of the claimed genus are actually
4 disclosed in the '865 patent?

5 A. I'm trying to recall. The names are given, but not
6 the structural -- structure. So maybe if you could be a little
7 more precise with your question.

8 Q. Does the patent disclose a phosphate-buffered
9 sucrose-stabilized species?

10 A. Yes, it does.

11 Q. And does the patent disclose any other formulation
12 that does not use a phosphate buffer?

13 A. No, it does not.

14 Q. And I'll ask you the second question of the written
15 description legal inquiry.

16 Quote -- excuse me.

17 Does the '865 patent disclose structural features
18 common to the members of the genus so that a person of ordinary
19 skill in the art can visualize or recognize the members of the
20 genus of formulations?

21 A. No, it does not.

22 Q. If we turn to Slide 52 of slide deck DDX 8,
23 Dr. MacMichael, will you please provide the Court with a
24 summary of your opinions with regard to the written description
25 inquiry.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. My summaries are -- there's three points I'd like to
2 make.

3 One is every example has phosphate buffer or sucrose
4 stabilizer -- excuse me -- every example has phosphate buffer
5 and a sucrose stabilizer.

6 Q. And how many embodiments are within the possession of
7 the inventors of the '865 patent according to the '865
8 specification?

9 A. There's only one embodiment.

10 Q. And in your opinion, Dr. MacMichael, would a person
11 of ordinary skill in the art be able to visualize or recognize
12 any other members of the genus of formulations that's claimed
13 by the '865 patent?

14 A. No.

15 Q. If we turn to Slide 54, please.

16 THE COURT: Yes, counsel?

17 MR. BERL: I just want to note for the record that we
18 did not receive that slide that he just presented.

19 THE COURT: I'm sorry. Say that again.

20 MR. BERL: We did not receive the slide that he just
21 presented. The parties have been exchanging demonstratives,
22 objecting. We've all been playing by the rules, and I've never
23 seen that slide before.

24 MR. SALMEN: Your Honor, I can explain that.

25 Counsel for Regeneron objected to our original slides

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 there; so we tried to pare those down in response to their
2 objections. And then we submitted them today.

3 THE COURT: Is the objection, Mr. Berl, to Slide 54?

4 MR. BERL: No. 52.

5 THE COURT: 52.

6 MR. BERL: They pared it down, I suppose, but they
7 had information there that wasn't on the slide originally, and
8 then they didn't send it to us after they changed it.

9 THE COURT: Understood.

10 We've run afoul of any number of agreements in the
11 parties' joint memo. With y'all going forward from here, it is
12 this Court's rule we're going to convene and conduct this trial
13 pursuant to the rules of civil procedure, rules of evidence.
14 Y'all can deal with the fallout of failing to comply and abide
15 by the agreements you reached and the trial had been.

16 The Court will overrule the objection and the
17 presentation of the slide with that noted.

18 MR. SALMEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

19 BY MR. SALMEN:

20 Q. If we turn to Slide 54, please.

21 Dr. MacMichael, were you asked to evaluate whether
22 the patent passes the test for indefiniteness?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. And here on Slide 54, I see you have the
25 indefiniteness legal standard. I'll read that for you.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 "A patent is invalid for indefiniteness if it
2 claims -- if its claims" -- I'm sorry. Let me start over.

3 "A patent is invalid for indefiniteness if its claims
4 read in the light of the specification and the prosecution
5 history fail to inform with reasonable certainty those skilled
6 in the art about the scope of the invention."

7 Dr. MacMichael, is this the legal standard you
8 applied in evaluating the indefiniteness inquiry?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. If we turn to Slide 54, please, Dr. MacMichael, what
11 conclusion did you reach regarding whether the asserted claims
12 of the '865 patent passed the test for indefiniteness?

13 A. Yes. They weren't -- the claims are indefinite.

14 Q. And what part of the asserted claims, in your
15 opinion, are indefinite?

16 A. Well, there's the term "suitable for intravitreal
17 administration." However, what's suitable for intravitreal
18 administration is undefined.

19 Q. Dr. MacMichael, does the patent specification provide
20 any guidance to a skilled person to understand what is
21 considered suitable for intravitreal administration under the
22 asserted patent claims?

23 A. No. There's no information on suitability.

24 Q. And, Dr. MacMichael, because the term is not defined,
25 would persons of ordinary skill in the art be able to identify

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 a single interpretation of what it means to be suitable -- a
2 suitable formulation under the '865 patent?

3 A. Different POSAs approaching this could have
4 potentially different interpretations of what suitable means
5 and what's acceptable for the eye.

6 Q. Let's turn to Slide 57, please.

7 Dr. MacMichael, were you asked to evaluate the
8 written description requirement of the '572 patent? That's the
9 additional dosing patent that's been asserted against Mylan and
10 Biocon's BLA product.

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And what conclusions did you reach regarding the
13 written description requirement of the dosing patent?

14 A. Yes. I highlight that it's an aqueous media for
15 injection. There are, for example, physiological saline and
16 isotonic solution.

17 Q. Dr. MacMichael, does the '572 patent disclose a
18 representative number of species falling within the scope of
19 the genus of isotonic solutions covered by Claim 6 which we
20 have at the top here as PTX 3?

21 A. No. It only gives one mention of isotonic solution.

22 Q. What is that one mention of an isotonic solution?

23 A. Yes. It's given on the physiological saline. And as
24 this paragraph shows, physiological saline is the isotonic
25 solution that's being highlighted.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Dr. MacMichael, does the '572 patent disclose
2 structural features common to the members of the genus of
3 isotonic solutions covered by Claim 6 so that a person of
4 ordinary skill in the art can visualize or recognize all of the
5 members of the genus of isotonic solutions?

6 A. No, it does not.

7 Q. If we turn to Slide 58, please.

8 Dr. MacMichael, were you asked to review and evaluate
9 certain Regeneron aflibercept patents?

10 A. Yes, I was.

11 Q. If we turn to Slide 59, please. Dr. MacMichael, I
12 see you have a table here on DDX 8, Slide 59. Will you please
13 identify the information that you're going to provide in these
14 columns.

15 A. Yes. I'll go across the headers. The first column
16 is the U.S. patent number. The second header is publication
17 date. The third is issue date. The fourth is expiration date,
18 and the fifth is summary of claims/disclosures.

19 Q. And, Dr. MacMichael, did you review and consider all
20 of the patents and corresponding publications listed in this
21 table?

22 A. Yes, I did.

23 Q. Let's go through these one by one, please. First, in
24 Row 1, the '959 patent, did you review that patent?

25 A. Yes, I did.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And did you form an opinion regarding -- excuse me.

2 Did you reach a conclusion as to when the information
3 provided in the '959 patent was first published?

4 A. Yes, I did.

5 Q. And what was that publication date?

6 A. December 14th, 2000.

7 Q. And did you obtain that information from the document
8 here, DTX 3619?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Did you review and consider that document?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. And what was the summary of your review and analysis
13 of the '959 patent disclosures?

14 A. Yes. The '959 was -- pertained to the isolation of
15 the nucleic acids that actually coded for aflibercept. The
16 expression vectors used helped to assist with that expression
17 and met this for producing the VEGF Trap-Eye aflibercept.

18 Q. And based on your review and analysis of the '959
19 patent and its corresponding publication, would skilled persons
20 have been aware of the isolated nucleic acids expression
21 vectors and methods of producing VEGF Trap-Eye aflibercept as
22 of December 14th, 2000?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Moving on to the next one, Dr. MacMichael, the '746
25 patent, did you review and analyze the '746 patent?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes, I did.

2 Q. And did you reach a conclusion as to when the
3 information provided in the '746 patent was first published?

4 A. Yes, I did.

5 Q. And did you obtain that information from DTX 4229?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. What was the publication date of the information
8 provided in the '746 patent?

9 A. August 11th, 2005.

10 Q. Based on your review and analysis of the '746 patent
11 and its corresponding publication, what disclosures would have
12 been available to the skilled person as of August 11, 2005?

13 A. I'm sorry. Could you please repeat that. I didn't
14 track.

15 Q. Sure.

16 Did you provide a summary of the disclosures from the
17 '746 patent and its corresponding publication?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And what was the summary of the disclosures that you
20 concluded?

21 A. That the patent was a method of treating retinal
22 neovascularization.

23 Q. And did that method include the use and
24 administration of aflibercept?

25 A. Yes, it did.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. So based on your review and analysis of the '746
2 patent and its corresponding publication, would a person of
3 ordinary skill in the art have known as of August 11th, 2005,
4 the method of treating retinal neovascularization with
5 aflibercept?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And turning to the next row on the table in Slide 59,
8 DDX 8, this is the '747 patent, Dr. MacMichael. Did you review
9 and analyze the '747 patent?

10 A. Yes, I did.

11 Q. And did you form a conclusion as to when the
12 information provided in the '747 patent was first published?

13 A. Yes, I did.

14 Q. What was that date?

15 A. February 9th, 2006.

16 Q. And did you obtain that information from DTX 8209?

17 A. Yes, I did.

18 Q. Did you review and analyze that document?

19 A. Yes, I did.

20 Q. And what summary did you reach with regard to the
21 disclosures of the '747 patent that would have been available
22 as of that publication?

23 A. It was a therapeutic method for treating an eye
24 disorder.

25 Q. And did that therapeutic method for treating an eye

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 disorder disclosure include the use of aflibercept?

2 A. Yes, it did.

3 Q. Turning to the next row, the '799 patent, did you
4 review the '799 patent?

5 A. Yes, I did.

6 Q. Did you reach a conclusion as to when the information
7 disclosed in the '799 patent was first published?

8 A. Yes, I did.

9 Q. What was that date?

10 A. November 24th, 2005.

11 Q. Did you obtain that information from DTX 8208?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. Did you review and analyze that document?

14 A. Yes, I did.

15 Q. And what summary did you reach regarding the
16 disclosures of the '799 patent and its corresponding
17 publication?

18 A. That it was a therapeutic method for treating an eye
19 disorder, including with aflibercept.

20 Q. If we turn to the next row, the '757 patent, did you
21 review and analyze the '757 patent?

22 A. Yes, I did.

23 Q. Did you reach a conclusion as to when the information
24 available in the '757 patent was first published?

25 A. Yes, I did.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. What was that date?

2 A. July 28th, 2005.

3 Q. Did you obtain that information from DTX 8206?

4 A. Yes, I did.

5 Q. Did you review and analyze that document as well?

6 A. Yes, I did.

7 Q. And what conclusion did you reach regarding the
8 disclosure that was available via the '757 patent and its
9 corresponding publication as of July 28th, 2005?

10 A. Yes. The patent focuses on the VEGF Trap-Eye
11 aflibercept molecule and the nucleotide amino acid sequences
12 that produced the aflibercept product.

13 Q. Two more, Dr. MacMichael.

14 Looking at the second-to-last row, the '758 patent,
15 did you review and analyze that patent?

16 A. Yes, I did.

17 Q. And did you reach a conclusion as to when the
18 information available -- I'm sorry. Did you reach a conclusion
19 as to when the information provided in the '758 patent was
20 first published?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. And what was that date?

23 A. November 3rd, 2005.

24 Q. And did you obtain that information from the
25 documents cited here, DTX 8207?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes, I did.

2 Q. Did you review and analyze that document as well?

3 A. Yes, I did.

4 Q. And what conclusion did you reach regarding the scope
5 of the disclosure of the '758 patent and its corresponding 2005
6 publication?

7 A. That it was a method for inhibiting VEGF activity in
8 a mammal.

9 Q. Did that method of inhibiting VEGF activity in a
10 mammal include a disclosure of the aflibercept molecule?

11 A. Yes, it did.

12 Q. Last one, last row, the '173 patent, Dr. MacMichael,
13 did you review and analyze the '173 patent?

14 A. Yes, I did.

15 Q. And did you reach a conclusion as to when the
16 information provided in the '173 patent was first published?

17 A. Yes, I did.

18 Q. What was that date?

19 A. April 10th, 2008.

20 Q. And what conclusion did you reach regarding the
21 disclosures that were available to a skilled person as of
22 April 10th, 2008, based on the '173 patent?

23 A. Yes. It was a patent focused on the composition
24 comprising the VEGF Trap-Eye aflibercept molecule.

25 Q. Dr. MacMichael, one final point I wanted to ask, did

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 you have an opportunity to review the animations and other
2 demonstratives that Dr. Trout presented to the Court during his
3 direct examination?

4 A. Yes, I did.

5 Q. And have you provided your own version of those
6 animations?

7 A. Yes, I did.

8 Q. Have you prepared a version of those animations?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Can you explain to the Court why you wanted to
11 provide your own version of those animations.

12 A. Yes. Though Dr. Trout's animation was helpful, I
13 thought it could be -- should be a little more realistic and
14 show a little more detail with respect to the overall size of
15 polysorbate with respect to the aflibercept molecule, and the
16 fact that the polysorbate acting as a surface-active agent
17 would have also coated the walls of the vial as well as the
18 exposed portion of the stopper that faces the liquid.

19 Q. Here on the screen?

20 A. I'm sorry. I misstated that. It would also coat the
21 stopper, but it would also protect inactivation at the
22 air-water interface. And that was not shown in the diagram
23 either.

24 Q. And I think we'll cover that in your version of the
25 animation, Dr. MacMichael. Can you please identify for the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Court what we have on the screen here.

2 A. Yes. What we have on the screen is this is an
3 illustration of a vial containing aflibercept and
4 polysorbate 80.

5 Q. Is this Dr. Trout's version?

6 THE COURT: 20, Doctor? Polysorbate 20.

7 THE WITNESS: I'm sorry. Polysorbate 20. My
8 apologies.

9 THE COURT: Okay. Just making sure. Thank you.

10 BY MR. SALMEN:

11 Q. And if we proceed through this -- turn to the next
12 slide -- what do we have here?

13 A. Yes. We have illustrated the representations of a
14 polysorbate 20 molecule and an aflibercept molecule.

15 Q. Is the polysorbate 20 -- again, this is Dr. Trout's
16 characterization of the polysorbate 20 in the aflibercept?

17 A. Yes. And what Dr. Trout did was he showed where the
18 hydrophobic patches would be shown on the molecule itself are
19 highlighted in red as well as the hydrophobic tail of the
20 polysorbate is highlighted in red.

21 Q. And how did you want to modify this presentation that
22 Dr. Trout gave to the Court?

23 A. Just to show a little more realistic representation
24 of the size of the molecules and some of the additional
25 functionality of the surface-active agent of polysorbate 20.

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And here on DDX 10, Slide Number 3, is this a
2 replication of one of Dr. Trout's slides, PDX 5004?

3 A. Yes, it is.

4 Q. Is this where you obtained the proportionality
5 between the polysorbate 20 and the aflibercept?

6 A. Yes, it is.

7 Q. And if we carry on to the next slide here, DDX 10-4,
8 can you please explain to the Court how you modified
9 Dr. Trout's explanation?

10 A. Yes. We replaced the original illustrations with the
11 previous -- the one from the previous slide which actually show
12 the molecular spinal structure of aflibercept.

13 Q. And we also have the molecular structure of
14 polysorbate here?

15 A. As well as polysorbate 20.

16 Q. And then how did we modify the animation in the box?

17 A. We basically replaced the illustrations of the
18 aflibercept and the polysorbate with the more representative
19 and more realistic size ratio using the electron cloud
20 structures of the aflibercept and polysorbate 20.

21 Q. Dr. MacMichael, did you review Dr. Trout's testimony
22 regarding these presentations?

23 A. Yes, I did.

24 Q. And what clarification did you want to make with
25 regard to the animated portion of Dr. Trout's presentation?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Well, there's two things. One is these -- in
2 chemistry there can be chemical bonds that are called covalent
3 bonds, and it takes energy to break them. What we have here is
4 not a covalent interaction. It's called a hydrophobic
5 interaction. So the light likes to dissolve light. So the
6 hydrophobic portions of the molecule of the polysorbate are
7 being attracted to the hydrophobic portions of the aflibercept.

8 Q. Okay.

9 If we run the animation here, Mr. Gibson.

10 Can you explain to the Court what you've illustrated
11 here, Dr. MacMichael.

12 A. Yes. What we're showing is, though the aflibercept
13 binds hydrophobically to the hydrophobic patches -- I'm
14 sorry -- the polysorbate 20 binds to the hydrophobic patches of
15 the aflibercept, it can disassociate from those -- and then
16 reassociate to those hydrophobic patches of the aflibercept.

17 Q. Would you describe this as a static or a dynamic
18 environment?

19 A. It's dynamic.

20 Q. If we turn to the next slide here, were there any
21 additional clarifications that you wanted to make?

22 A. Yeah. I wanted to show that, in fact, the
23 polysorbate 20 puts a layer on the surface of the vial as well
24 as the surface of the stopper and at the surface area
25 interface.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. And if we could run the animation here,
2 Dr. MacMichael, would you please explain to the Court.

3 A. Yes. What we're seeing here is that, by polysorbate
4 adhering to the walls of the vessel and at the air interface,
5 the hydrophobic portions of the polysorbate are interacting
6 with the surface of the vial and the hydrophilic -- or loves
7 water is what hydrophilic means -- is facing out into the
8 aqueous environment.

9 But the polysorbate is coating the walls of the
10 vessel and the stopper, preventing the aflibercept from
11 adhering to the wall. Though it's not absolute, some
12 aflibercept may -- the polysorbate can disassociate from the
13 wall and reassociate to the wall -- I'm sorry -- the
14 polysorbate can disassociate from the wall and reassociate to
15 the wall.

16 Q. And this is on Slide 15 and 16 of DDX 10.

17 Dr. MacMichael, any last clarifications to the
18 animations here?

19 A. Just that you also can see that it's protecting the
20 aflibercept from denaturation by putting a layer of polysorbate
21 at the air-liquid interface.

22 MR. SALMEN: Thank you, Dr. MacMichael.

23 Your Honor, at this time I pass the witness.

24 THE COURT: Understood.

25 Cross. Go right ahead, Counsel.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 CROSS-EXAMINATION

2 BY MR. BERL:

3 Q. Good afternoon, Dr. MacMichael.

4 A. Good afternoon, Mr. Berl.

5 Q. First of all, I hope you're having a speedy recovery
6 from your surgery.

7 A. Yes. Thank you.

8 Q. Doctor, you're not Mylan-Biocon's only formulation
9 expert on the '865 patent in this case, are you?

10 A. No.

11 Q. Dr. Rabinow also testified, correct?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And you've read Dr. Rabinow's expert report in this
14 case?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. There's a section of your report entitled "State of
17 the Art," right?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And in that section you undertake an analysis of
20 scores of references, correct?

21 A. Correct.

22 Q. Including some of the references you discussed today,
23 right?

24 A. I'd have to -- yes.

25 Q. Now, Doctor, if we go to the first slide, there's a

1 section of Dr. Rabinow's report that's also about the state of
2 the art, right?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And if we look here on the screen, page 12 of your
5 report is identical, virtually word for word, to page 19 of
6 Dr. Rabinow's report, right?

7 A. I would have to read through them and do a
8 comparative analysis; but for sake of time, I'll assume you're
9 making an accurate statement.

10 Q. Let's go to the next page. Page 13 of your report is
11 identical, word for word, with page 20 of Dr. Rabinow's report,
12 right?

13 A. I would have to read through them; but for today,
14 I'll assume that you're correct.

15 Q. Looks like it, right?

16 A. There seem to be similarities as I'm taking a very
17 quick look at it.

18 Q. And page 21 of Dr. Rabinow's report, if we go to the
19 next, is essentially identical to page 14 of your report,
20 right?

21 A. Again, I would have to read through it. High level,
22 just taking a quick look, there seems to be similarity.

23 Q. And, Doctor, the entire section, page after page
24 after page after page of your report, is identical word for
25 word with Dr. Rabinow's report, right?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, MD - CROSS

1 THE COURT: One second, Doctor.

2 Yes, Counsel?

3 MR. SALMEN: Object to that question, Your Honor.

4 He's already stated he would need to do a comparison of this.

5 That's quite a generalization to present to the doctor at this
6 time.

7 THE COURT: Why don't we go one at a time, Mr. Berl,
8 given that limitation. I mean, I don't have all the reports.
9 I've made that abundantly clear, but I understand the point
10 thus far. But I'm going to sustain the objection.

11 Ask your next question, sir.

12 BY MR. BERL:

13 Q. Doctor, are you aware of any differences of any words
14 of that long substantive section of your report compared to
15 Dr. Rabinow's?

16 MR. SALMEN: Same objection, Your Honor.

17 THE COURT: Overruled.

18 THE WITNESS: I would have to read through both
19 documents and do a comparative analysis.

20 BY MR. BERL:

21 Q. You don't deny, Dr. MacMichael, that there are other
22 substantive sections of your report that are identical to the
23 sections of Dr. Rabinow's report, right?

24 A. I would have to look at both reports and look at the
25 various sections. You just asked me I don't deny that they're

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 identical. I would have to look at both reports.

2 Q. You read his report, right, Dr. MacMichael?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. And you have no basis to tell me right now that there
5 are -- or to deny that there are large sections of the
6 report -- multiple sections of your report that are identical
7 to Dr. Rabinow's report, right?

8 A. I would have to read both reports and do a cross -- a
9 cross comparison of the two reports.

10 Q. Doctor, the first draft of your expert reports was
11 generated by the lawyers at RMMS, right?

12 A. No, it wasn't.

13 Q. The first draft of your expert report was not
14 generated by RMMS?

15 A. RMMS, using my opinions and my information, helped
16 write the report.

17 Q. Okay. So my question is really simple.

18 The first draft of your expert report was generated
19 by RMMS, correct?

20 A. They took my opinions and put them into the report.

21 Q. The final report was written by the RMMS attorneys
22 too, right?

23 A. With my opinions and input.

24 Q. But they wrote it, right?

25 A. If you mean wrote it by actually typing it up into

1 the document, then the answer would be yes.

2 Q. The actual writing of your reports was performed by
3 an RMMS attorney actually writing the report, right?

4 A. With strong input from myself.

5 Q. Well, Doctor, all of the materials considered in
6 preparing your reports were provided for you by the lawyers at
7 RMMS, correct?

8 A. All the citations that are in these various documents
9 that were cited were also provided in our reading room.

10 Q. In fact, Doctor, at your deposition you weren't able
11 to point to a single section, paragraph, or even sentence of
12 your expert reports that you yourself wrote. Isn't that true?

13 A. During my deposition I can't recall that conversation
14 occurring.

15 Q. Do you deny that at your deposition you were unable
16 to point to a single section, paragraph, or even sentence of
17 your expert reports that you wrote?

18 A. I'll repeat it. That conversation, I don't recall.
19 So I can't deny it.

20 Q. Let's take a look at your deposition, Doctor, on
21 page 21. You recall that I deposed you just a few months ago,
22 right?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. In Chicago. It was already spring and warm, right?

25 A. It was Easter.

1 Q. Okay.

2 THE COURT: Doctor, if I could ask you -- I know
3 you're relying on that screen there, but if you wouldn't mind
4 adjusting that mic just to make sure everyone can hear you, in
5 particular Madam Court Reporter.

6 Thank you so much, sir.

7 I'm sorry, Mr. Berl. I think we were discussing the
8 weather in Chicago.

9 MR. BERL: Yes.

10 BY MR. BERL:

11 Q. We had a nice day inside while the sun was shining in
12 Chicago; is that right?

13 A. We had a day inside.

14 Q. I enjoyed a day inside.

15 THE COURT: It sounds like a lovely day. Let's get
16 to the substance of the matter.

17 MR. BERL: The court reporter did not enjoy it.

18 BY MR. BERL:

19 Q. Doctor, you were under oath through that day,
20 correct?

21 A. Yes, I was.

22 Q. And you were testifying truthfully that day?

23 A. Yes, I was.

24 Q. And let's put up page 21 of your deposition starting
25 on line 10 to page -- to line 16.

1 Doctor, I asked you, "Can you point to any section,
2 paragraph, even sentence of your report and say that's my
3 writing? I wrote those words?"

4 "A No. But if given time, I'll walk
5 through here and show you the sections that are
6 in here that were my concepts that were then put
7 down by the RMMS attorneys into the document."

8 Did I ask you that question, and did you give that
9 answer, Doctor?

10 THE COURT: One second, Doctor.

11 Yes, Counsel?

12 Will you repeat that, Mr. Berl.

13 BY MR. BERL:

14 Q. Did I ask you that question and did you provide that
15 answer?

16 A. Well, if this is the written deposition, then I'm
17 going to have to say yes.

18 MR. SALMEN: I would just object to that as improper
19 impeachment. He stated in response to the first answer that he
20 didn't recall.

21 THE COURT: Understood. Overruled.

22 Mr. Berl.

23 MR. BERL: I'm moving to infringement now. I don't
24 think I'm going to get in for a while into the -- what's been
25 considered by Mylan to be highly confidential material. But I

1 don't know what the witness is going to say in response to my
2 questions; so I'm not sure what to do. I'm fine proceeding
3 open. But if they want to close it, I have no objection.

4 THE COURT: Fair enough. But given the interest of a
5 free flow of exchange on cross, it seems that if -- we should
6 seal the courtroom out of abundance of caution unless Mylan has
7 an objection to that.

8 MR. SALMEN: No objection. That would be our
9 preference, Your Honor.

10 THE COURT: Understood.

11 Ladies and gentlemen, those of you who have been kind
12 enough to come and go, if I could ask you to go once again
13 given that we may get into some of the subject matter subject
14 to this Court's protective order. So if you're not permitted
15 to be here pursuant to that order, if I could ask you to step
16 out. Thank you all so very much.

17 I'll ask court security to seal our courtroom again.
18 Thank you.

19 (The following proceedings (1451/19 to 1480/8) were
20 had under seal, and are filed under separate cover.)

21
22
23
24
25

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

(Record unsealed.)

THE COURT: Apologies. With my 7-year-old here, there was a line to my private restroom; so it took me longer to get here than I expected.

Mr. Berl, go right ahead.

BY MR. BERL:

Q. Doctor, I would like to discuss the effect of the word "comprising" in the claims which you addressed on direct, right?

A. Yes, I did.

Q. You're not a legal expert on the effect of the word "comprising," correct?

A. No, but I'm getting a lot smarter. You guys are advising me on this stuff.

Q. Someone is.

Doctor, in your view, because of the use of the word "comprising," there are a litany of compounds that could be added to the formulation, right?

A. That's the way I understand it.

1 Q. For example, you could add hydrochloric acid which
2 would denature the protein?

3 A. Well, if you look at the claims, there's broad
4 categories that are being proposed and examples given for
5 comprised. There was no example of adding an acid to it.

6 Q. But your view is, as an example, you could add
7 hydrochloric acid in these claims and denature the protein,
8 right?

9 A. If you're adjusting the pH, you could, yeah.

10 Q. Okay. And in your view, the patent doesn't exclude
11 those kinds of inoperative embodiments, right?

12 A. Well, when you use the word "comprise," which then
13 opens -- very broadly opens up multiple potential compounds
14 that can be used, without experimentation, you could wind up
15 with a formulation that would be detrimental to the protein.

16 Q. Right. And you think the patent is not enabled
17 because it doesn't exclude those kinds of embodiments that will
18 work, right?

19 A. What I'm saying is that the claims using the term
20 "comprised" -- and they give examples, four, five, six examples
21 in each of the comprises -- that there's an inordinate number
22 of potential possible formulations. It would require
23 experimentation to determine the ideal formulation.

24 Q. Okay. Doctor, your enablement analysis is premised
25 on the scope or breadth of the claims as shown in Slide 44 that

1 you showed, right?

2 A. I'm sorry.

3 Yes.

4 Q. And your Slide 44 suggests that the claims that are
5 asserted like Claim 4 are no narrower than Claim 1, right?

6 A. That's what we're graphically trying to show.

7 Q. Okay. But Claim 1 doesn't require 40 mg/mL of
8 aflibercept and Claim 4 does, right?

9 A. Claim 1 -- I'm sorry. Yeah. Claim 2 is dependent on
10 Claim 1, but -- yeah, you're right.

11 Q. And, likewise, Claim 1 doesn't require .03
12 to .1 percent polysorbate but Claim 4 does, right?

13 A. Yeah, I don't have Claim 1 memorized and it's not on
14 this graphic; so I don't want to answer from memory.

15 Q. Okay. But you understand that Claim 2 adds the
16 comprises polysorbate limitation, right?

17 A. Yes. But, again, I'd have to see the entirety, and
18 we're missing Claim 1. I apologize.

19 Q. Doctor, you know that Dr. Rabinow testified on
20 Friday, right?

21 A. That's what I was told, yes.

22 Q. And let's take a look at some of what he said if we
23 go to page 1164 of the transcript.

24 He was asked, "As of 2006, in your opinion,
25 optimizing the stability of a protein formulation was routine

1 for the POSA?"

2 And he answered, "Yes."

3 Do you see that?

4 A. It's routine. Yes, I see it.

5 Q. Do you agree with Dr. Rabinow?

6 A. Routine in the fact that an organization -- a
7 biotechnology company or a biopharmaceutical company engaged in
8 developing multiple proteins would have a routine for how they
9 screen those products.

10 Q. So do you agree or do you not with Dr. Rabinow,
11 Doctor?

12 A. In general.

13 Q. In general yes?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. And let's take a look at the next thing he said on
16 page 1168.

17 He was asked, "And it wouldn't require undue
18 experimentation to make formulations falling within the scope
19 of the asserted claims, right?"

20 And he answered, "Correct."

21 Do you agree with him?

22 A. "Undue" is a relative term. It would take a
23 significant amount of experimentation looking at all the
24 possible variables that are proposed in the claims to come up
25 with a formulation that is satisfactory; so I would say

1 significant experimentation.

2 Q. Do you agree with Dr. Rabinow or do you disagree?

3 A. I'm saying it requires significant experimentation.

4 So undue experimentation, meaning that it's impossible? No.

5 But significant experimentation. So I guess with that nuance,

6 I'll agree with Dr. Rabinow.

7 Q. Okay. Well, I want to make sure I understand your

8 opinion.

9 You don't have an opinion in this case that making
10 the formulations to practice the claims that are asserted of
11 the '865 patent would be undue experimentation, right?

12 A. What I've said all along is it would take a
13 significant amount of experimentation.

14 Q. So you don't have an opinion -- you're not telling
15 the Court as an expert that it would require undue
16 experimentation, right?

17 A. Well, like I said, "undue" is a relative term. My
18 term "significant" really means a significant amount of work.

19 Q. I have a single question, Doctor. It's a yes or no.

20 Are you telling the Court that practicing claim --
21 the claims that are asserted in the '865 patent would require
22 undue experimentation, or are you not telling the Court that?

23 A. It would require undue experimentation. It would
24 require a significant amount of experimentation. That's my
25 testimony.

1 Q. That's as far as you'll go, right?

2 A. Well, undue means an inordinate number of
3 experiments. But every organization that works in therapeutic
4 proteins has staff and equipment on board with the proper
5 resources to do that significant amount of work to develop the
6 formulations. So undue would mean something that is beyond the
7 realm of being able to be achieved.

8 Q. In your view, undue experimentation is a very
9 amorphous term, right?

10 A. It's left open to interpretation.

11 Q. Undue experimentation, as you've applied the phrase
12 in this case, depends on whether you're a big company or a
13 small company?

14 A. That's not what I said.

15 Q. Okay. Let's take a look at your deposition,
16 page 233, line 1. We'll go to line 11.

17 "Q Right. And why the experimentation to
18 fill in any gaps between the examples would not
19 be undue experimentation, that burden was on
20 Regeneron to show that?

21 "A Undue experimentation depends -- is a
22 very amorphous term. If I'm a little company,
23 undue; and if I'm a big company, it might not be
24 a big deal to run an inordinate number of
25 experiments. So the word "undue," let's take

1 that out of it. Additional experiments."

2 Was that my question and was that your answer,
3 Doctor?

4 A. Yes. And I believe that you're citing this on this
5 slide. I believe that it agrees with the statement I just
6 made.

7 Q. Okay. Now, Doctor, you understand that the Court
8 here may have to decide whether the experimentation to practice
9 the claims is routine experimentation or undue experimentation,
10 right?

11 A. Yes. So what we're saying is that the patent fails
12 to give sufficient information on how to make the formulation;
13 so the patent in itself is indefinite. You have to go out and
14 do experiments to determine which of these various comprises,
15 various stabilizing agents, et cetera, would be acceptable in a
16 final formulation.

17 So as we've been saying for the last two or three
18 minutes, undue versus significant, these are relative terms.
19 It would take work.

20 Q. Okay. So it would take work, but you're not taking a
21 position on the question of whether that work would be undue or
22 routine, right?

23 A. The term "undue" is being -- you know, the term
24 "undue" means if the patent had been properly constructed and
25 gave information to the reader of how to actually develop the

1 cited product in the patent, then it wouldn't require
2 significant experimentation. But the patent fails to do that.
3 And, therefore, significant experimentation would be required.

4 Q. Okay. Let me -- I'll give you one more chance to
5 answer the question, and then I'm going to move on.

6 If the Court has to decide between routine
7 experimentation and undue experimentation, you're not putting
8 your finger on the scale of undue experimentation, right?
9 You're not giving an opinion?

10 A. I'm saying -- you can use the word "undue," but
11 I'm -- it's undue because the patent wasn't properly
12 constructed. But a significant amount of work would have to be
13 done to do that work.

14 Q. Now, Doctor, your opinion is that "protein
15 formulations are routinely optimized to improve stability of
16 their active ingredients"?

17 A. Protein -- can you show me that quote.

18 Q. Sure. I'll read it again.

19 "Protein formulations are routinely optimized to
20 improve stability of their active ingredients."

21 A. Is that from one of my depositions or one article I
22 wrote?

23 Q. I'm asking whether you agree with that statement,
24 Doctor.

25 A. Could you repeat it one more time.

1 Q. Sure.

2 "Protein formulations are routinely optimized to
3 improve stability of their active ingredients."

4 A. Yes.

5 Q. Okay. Now, you and Dr. Rabinow both relied on the
6 Kaisheva reference; isn't that right?

7 A. Yes. I read the Rabinow testimony, but I can't pull
8 out off the top of my head if he, in fact, looked at that
9 document.

10 Q. Okay. Let's take a look at what Dr. Rabinow said
11 about it. And that's on page 1020 of the transcript from last
12 week.

13 And he says, "Kaisheva provides a recipe for how you
14 go about developing protein formulations in terms of a
15 three-step process."

16 Is that right?

17 A. That's what it says.

18 Q. And you said essentially the same thing in your
19 expert report if we pull up paragraph 63 of your first expert
20 report. And you cite Kaisheva at the end of that paragraph.

21 Do you see that?

22 A. Yes.

23 Q. And it says, "The optimization process further
24 involves combining a therapeutic protein with excipients and
25 then varying the concentrations of the excipients. The

1 formulation development approach is as follows: Selecting the
2 optimum solution pH, selecting buffer type and concentration,
3 evaluating the effect of various excipients of the liquid and
4 lyophilized stability, and optimizing the concentration of the
5 screened excipients."

6 That's your opinion, correct?

7 A. Yes. If I had a new protein coming over from
8 discovery that had not been properly formulated and we were
9 needing to get into animal studies and clinical trials, it
10 would require a series of activities to get that into a
11 successful formulation.

12 Q. But if you know the optimum pH, then you can take
13 that linear approach to select a buffer type and concentration,
14 then various other excipients, then optimize the concentration,
15 right?

16 A. And what -- these two sentences in this paragraph are
17 talking about is a significant amount of work. Now, that work
18 may be routine, meaning the formulation organization does that
19 work on a repeated basis, thus the term "routine." Let's not
20 take away the fact that it's a significant amount of work.

21 Q. Okay. In this case, Doctor, the patent already
22 discloses the optimum pH for aflibercept, 6.2 to 6.3, right?

23 A. So that's one point of the overall formulation. We
24 have the pH.

25 Q. You agree with me, right?

1 A. I'd have to go back to the patent, but I do recall
2 that one of the formulations was at pH 6.2. But I don't want
3 to make a sweeping statement.

4 Q. Now, that information, as far as you know, was not
5 known before the '865 patent, correct?

6 A. The optimum -- the pI of aflibercept.

7 Q. The optimum pH formulations for aflibercept for
8 ophthalmologic administration, right?

9 A. I'd have to look at the sequence, go back and look at
10 the literature, but the pI, where the protein's neutral,
11 meaning it has the same positive and negative charge and there
12 it's neutral, that pI dictate what pH you want to hold it at.
13 And if I was to go back and search the literature, you're
14 asking me was there any previous art that showed aflibercept
15 had a pI that was acceptable at pH 6.2. I just don't have that
16 information in front of me.

17 Q. Okay. Doctor, in choosing excipients in that process
18 that we've just described from Kaisheva, the POSA would narrow
19 down choices on the basis of their knowledge from the
20 literature, right?

21 A. If they had a new novel protein coming in, this is
22 how they would approach it. But if they had a protein that had
23 a patent on it, one would expect that there would be more
24 guidance in that patent on how to actually do it without having
25 to go back and de novo do additional experiments to get to that

1 final point.

2 Q. Okay. Doctor, you can't imagine a scenario where
3 someone would be working on products for helping with diseases
4 of the eye without referring to the previous literature, right?

5 A. I've never met a scientist that's developing
6 something that doesn't look at the previous literature.

7 Q. That would actually be irresponsible not to look at
8 the previous literature, including the prior products that have
9 been approved, right?

10 A. Well, yeah. I think the hypothetical, if one of my
11 formulation people came to me and said, hey, I didn't look at
12 anything; I'm just going to go ahead and start formulating, I'd
13 be a little uncomfortable with that answer. Well, have you
14 looked at other similar molecules and gotten some guidance on
15 what may be successful?

16 Q. And included within that literature that the POSA
17 would consult is information about what excipients have been
18 used in intravitreal products, right?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. But in conducting your analysis in this case, you
21 didn't look at all the intravitreal products that FDA had
22 approved and look at all the formulations, right?

23 A. I looked at a majority of them. I can't recall if I
24 looked at every approved intravitreal eye formulation. I
25 cannot tell you that I have.

1 Q. Doctor, in fact, other than Lucentis, you couldn't
2 identify any FDA-approved formulation that you looked at in
3 connection with your expert reports in this case, right?

4 A. I looked at Regeneron's product Eylea. I looked at
5 Lucentis.

6 Q. That's it, right?

7 A. Those were two that I looked at, yes.

8 Q. And neither one of those was approved as of the
9 priority date in the middle of 2006, right?

10 A. I'd have to go back and look at the approval dates,
11 et cetera.

12 Q. Doctor, the POSA engaging in experimentation to
13 practice the claim would not make formulations at random,
14 right?

15 A. Any good formulation scientist would be a POSA,
16 according to either Dr. Trout's or my definition, would have --
17 you know, in either of our definitions, such a POSA that would
18 be working in your formulation group would at least have some
19 sense of what excipients to use.

20 I believe that was your question.

21 Q. And they wouldn't make formulations at random, right?

22 A. They would do it in a logical manner.

23 Q. And if you've worked in proteins, you'll have a good
24 understanding of what excipients have been used successfully
25 and what buffers have been used successfully, right?

1 A. Yes. Yes.

2 Q. Doctor, in the patent, the '865 patent, there are no
3 new classes of excipients, right?

4 A. Everything in that patent is -- all the compounds
5 cited in the patent are known molecules. There's no novel new
6 molecule being introduced.

7 Is that your question? I'm not sure.

8 Q. Yeah, they're pretty much all household names in
9 excipients and stabilizers, right?

10 A. Yes, they are.

11 Q. Now, I'd like to talk about choosing a buffer, which
12 you address.

13 Another consideration for formulating to avoid
14 aggregation is the choice of a buffer to keep the formulation
15 within the narrow pH range to keep your formulation stable,
16 right?

17 A. Ideally you want to keep it in a narrow pH range. If
18 you go too basic or too acidic, you can get undesirable changes
19 in the charge of the molecule and undesirable interactions.

20 Q. And various buffers are available to adjust the pH
21 of protein formulations?

22 A. There's multiple compounds out there that can be used
23 as a buffering agent.

24 Q. And, typically, you pick a range for a buffer that's
25 applicable to the pH you're trying to achieve?

1 A. Yes. What you look at, again, is what they call the
2 pI. That's where the neutral pH of a protein is. Where is
3 it neutral? And from that, you pick a candidate buffer that
4 would then be where the pI of that protein would fall within
5 the range of that buffer.

6 Q. And the POSA reading the claims and the specification
7 would have considered four buffers as suitable for formulations
8 of the asserted claims: succinate, citrate, phosphate, and
9 histidine. Right?

10 A. There's other buffers out there that could have been
11 considered.

12 Q. But those are the ones that the person of skill
13 reading the patent would want to use, correct?

14 A. You can pull up the claims so I can read it because
15 it comprised those, but I believe it was open-ended.

16 Q. My question is those are the four buffers that the
17 POSA practicing the claim would want to use, correct?

18 A. Those were examples that were given by the author.
19 They are buffers that could potentially be used.

20 Q. Those are the ones that the POSA would want to use,
21 correct?

22 A. Those are four examples that were used by the authors
23 to give examples of the other potential buffers that could be
24 used. The word "comprised" means that many other buffers could
25 be considered as well.

1 Q. To choose a buffer, you would look at the prior art
2 for which buffers were used successfully in previous products
3 for injection into the eye, right?

4 A. That would be a useful guidepost.

5 Q. And that can narrow down the overall number of
6 candidates you need to screen?

7 A. It can if you say such and such buffer was used in an
8 approved product by the FDA; therefore, there's precedent for
9 that buffer being previously used in an intravitreal
10 application.

11 Q. But you never undertook that analysis to look at
12 prior products, correct?

13 A. I didn't look at all the prior products.

14 Q. And with respect to a stabilizing agent, Doctor,
15 considerations for formulating a protein to avoid aggregation
16 typically include a choice of a stabilizing agent, right?

17 A. Yeah, if you're reading off of a document, it would
18 be very helpful if you could share it up on the screen. Is
19 that possible?

20 Q. Doctor, I'm asking you a question whether you agree
21 or not. Considerations for formulating a protein to avoid
22 aggregation typically include a choice of a stabilizing agent,
23 right?

24 A. Is that a quote from my deposition?

25 Q. I just want an answer to my question, Doctor.

1 A. Say it again, please.

2 Q. Yes.

3 Considerations for formulating a protein to avoid
4 aggregation typically include a choice of a stabilizing agent,
5 right?

6 A. It can require a stabilizing agent. Depending on
7 whether it's a liquid or a lyophilized formulation, you may use
8 certain sugars that you might not use in a liquid formulation.

9 Q. The patent says the stabilizing agent may be sucrose,
10 sorbitol, glycerol, trehalose, or mannitol, right?

11 A. That's not what it says. It says "comprises," and it
12 gives examples of those sugars.

13 Q. Doctor, those are the examples of sugars -- or of
14 stabilizing agents provided in the patent, right?

15 A. Those were examples that were provided in the patent
16 under the word "comprises," meaning that any other sugar could
17 be considered as well as a stabilizing agent.

18 Q. Doctor, all five of those options were well-known
19 stabilizing agents?

20 A. They were known to be stabilizing agents.

21 Q. If one was developing a formulation, one would screen
22 those stabilizing agents and see which one gave the overall
23 satisfactory performance, right?

24 A. If those were the five I wanted to look at, I would
25 screen those five.

1 Q. Now, you also reference in your slides -- so I don't
2 think you actually talked about it today -- something called
3 formulation design systems, right?

4 A. Are you talking about factorial design?

5 Q. A formulation design system. You know, something
6 called DOE or --

7 A. Design of -- yes, there's a book out there that I
8 wrote for cell gene therapy called *Aging* that describes the use
9 and the design of experiments.

10 Q. Through the design of experiments, or DOE, the whole
11 purpose is to minimize the amount of testing you have to do,
12 right?

13 A. Yes. Because if we were to run the hypothetical
14 amount of experiments that would have to be ran if you were to
15 make each individual formulation, it would be an inordinate
16 number.

17 Q. You yourself have either done or supervised design of
18 experiments going all the way back to 1990, right?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And the bottom line for design of experiments is you
21 look at multiple variables, like what excipients and what
22 buffers, and using various software out there, you can actually
23 achieve a screening of what is successful and not successful,
24 correct?

25 A. Yes. If I could explain to the Court what a design

1 of experiment is and how it's used, it might be helpful.

2 THE COURT: Go ahead, doctor.

3 THE WITNESS: Yes. A design of experiment you have,
4 Your Honor, have you in a numerous number of variables. And in
5 a traditional manner, you would only -- you would hold
6 everything constant but one variable and then change that
7 variable to see how it influences the outcome.

8 In a design of experiment, you can change multiple
9 variables, two or three, and then look at the results. And
10 there's software out there. There's one very popular one
11 called JNT, J-N-T, that lets you look at the results. And,
12 therefore, you can then sift through more results quicker and
13 have more variables in play rather than looking at one at a
14 time.

15 I believe, Mr. Berl, that's what you're referring to.

16 BY MR. BERL:

17 Q. Yes, it is. Thank you for the explanation,
18 Dr. MacMichael.

19 DOE is an intelligent technique to use to minimize
20 the amount of screening that's necessary?

21 A. Yes. It reduces -- it doesn't reduce the number of
22 candidates; it reduces the amount of work.

23 Q. It will exclude things that don't work?

24 A. Yes. The results will show which variables are not
25 getting you to the desired outcome.

1 Q. And so using design of experiments, you wouldn't have
2 to make every formulation, right?

3 A. That's correct.

4 Q. And anybody in the street knows that DOE is what
5 everybody does?

6 A. Everybody on the street -- I don't know about
7 everybody; but yes, scientists would know that a DOE can be
8 used to effectively reduce the number of variables that have to
9 be looked at in an actual physical wet chemistry lab.

10 Q. The POSA would conduct the design of experiments,
11 right?

12 A. The POSA could do a design of experiment.

13 Q. And, Doctor, you couldn't tell me at your deposition
14 how many formulations the POSA would have to make to practice
15 the claim using design of experiments, correct?

16 A. Yeah, because you -- and I couldn't answer that
17 today. I'd have to sit down, design the experiments, and look
18 at the number of components -- both the stabilizing agent, the
19 surfactants, et cetera -- and design that and look at which
20 variables I wanted to look at and how I wanted to vary those
21 variables.

22 Q. All you could say at your deposition was that with
23 design of experiments, the POSA would have to conduct multiple
24 experiments. You couldn't give any more specificity than that,
25 right?

1 A. And I just gave a little more specificity, yes.

2 Q. Not much, right? You don't have a number for me, do
3 you, in terms of how many experiments the POSA would have to
4 conduct?

5 THE COURT: One second, Doctor.

6 Yes, Counsel?

7 MR. SALMEN: Objection, Your Honor. He answered the
8 question, and it was consistent with his testimony at his
9 deposition.

10 THE COURT: Overruled.

11 Ask your question again, Mr. Berl.

12 BY MR. BERL:

13 Q. You don't have a number for me or for the Court today
14 about how many experiments a POSA would have to conduct to
15 practice the claims using a design of experiments, do you?

16 A. It's a large number. If I took six to seven
17 stabilizers and I took three to five surfactants, et cetera,
18 and I moved that down and multiplied it through, very quickly
19 you get to a very large number.

20 Q. With design of experiments you don't have a number of
21 how many experiments the POSA would have to conduct to practice
22 the claims, do you?

23 A. Well, I just explained to you, you're asking me to,
24 off the top of my head, tell you I was going to design a
25 complex experiment with five to six variables with multiple

1 candidates in each variable and that you would have to sit down
2 and intelligently design that experiment to determine which
3 variables you wanted to change in each experiment.

4 Q. You haven't undertaken that analysis in this case,
5 right?

6 A. We've looked at some hypotheticals. I was just going
7 to say, hypothetically, you would come to a very large number.

8 Q. But with design of experiments, the number is
9 smaller, and you have not provided a number about how many
10 experiments the POSA would have to conduct with design of
11 experiments, correct?

12 A. As I've explained three times -- I'll explain
13 again -- I would have to sit down and look -- remember, they
14 say comprised; so it isn't just glucose, sucrose, and mannitol;
15 it could be glucose, sucrose, mannitol, galactose, et cetera,
16 because it says "comprises." So the question is how broad am I
17 going on all the various claims that use the term "comprised"?
18 I could -- not just the examples given. Those are just
19 examples. I could wind up with an inordinate number.

20 Q. Doctor, you didn't consider any studies Regeneron did
21 other than those described in the '865 patent, right?

22 A. I did not have access to all the experiments that
23 Regeneron did.

24 Q. You never asked your counsel whether there was SEC
25 data for formulations that met requirements of the claim that

1 you didn't have already in the patent, right?

2 A. I don't recall.

3 Q. Doctor, you did look instead, when you talked today,
4 about various statements and file histories, correct?

5 A. Various statements and file histories?

6 Q. Do you remember you presented that earlier today?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Okay. Let's look at your Slide 47. You relied there
9 on a statement from --

10 THE COURT: One second, Mr. Berl.

11 Go ahead.

12 BY MR. BERL:

13 Q. You relied here, Doctor, in DTX 5053 on a statement
14 from a different file history, not the file history of the
15 '865 patent, right?

16 A. These are two documents that were cited on the --
17 looking at the *Wands* factors and looking on whether or not it
18 would take undue experimentation. And there's two citations
19 here.

20 Q. My question is, Doctor, that first citation, 5053, is
21 from the prosecution history of a different patent, not the
22 '865 patent, right?

23 A. I'll take your word for it.

24 Q. Okay. It's not even in the same family as the '865
25 patent, right?

1 A. I don't understand where you're heading with the
2 question. I'd love to answer it, but I'm not quite sure what
3 you're looking for.

4 Q. Okay. Doctor, you showed a statement on the screen
5 here that one of ordinary skill upon reading Remington's would
6 expect to engage -- would expect to engage in significant
7 nonroutine experimentation to develop a successful formulation
8 as claimed herein.

9 Is that what you showed?

10 A. That's what I showed.

11 Q. Now, Remington's is not the '865 patent, right?

12 A. No, it's not the '865 patent.

13 Q. Remington's does not disclose ophthalmologic
14 formulations of aflibercept, right?

15 A. I can't recall all the content of the Remington
16 article.

17 Q. As far as you know, Remington's does not disclose the
18 optimal pH range for ophthalmologic formulations of
19 aflibercept, right?

20 A. Off the top of my head, I can't recall that that
21 document cites that, no.

22 Q. Now, Doctor, you also cite in the second part of this
23 slide a statement from DTX 4430 that formulations of
24 pharmaceutical preparations and achieving a stable composition
25 is not a simple or routine matter. Is that right?

1 A. That's what it says.

2 Q. And you cited that from paragraph 10 of 4430, right?

3 A. 4430, page 003. I'm not sure -- it's enumerated 10,
4 yes.

5 Q. Okay.

6 Can we pull up the entirety of paragraph 10 rather
7 than the expurgated version that was presented by
8 Dr. MacMichael.

9 Do you see -- you showed the Court the first sentence
10 of paragraph 10; is that right?

11 A. I showed the first sentence of that paragraph.

12 Q. And in the last sentence it says, "I am familiar with
13 these literature articles, all in peer-review journals, which
14 indicate that arriving at a stable formulation is not a
15 straightforward matter, and it is not, for instance, possible
16 to apply a formulation for one drug to another."

17 Do you see that?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. And in practicing the '865 patent, the POSA wouldn't
20 have to go from one drug in the specification to another in the
21 claims. It's aflibercept in the specification and aflibercept
22 in the claims, right?

23 A. Yes. But I'm not quite sure what the question is.

24 Q. Okay. You answered it.

25 Doctor, you understand that Mylan conducted research

1 in connection with its 40 mg/mL aflibercept formulation, right?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. And you never investigated how much research was
4 required for Mylan with the '865 patent in hand to make
5 formulations within the scope of the claim, right?

6 A. I read through their formulation development history
7 report. It was a significant amount of work that was required.

8 Q. Well, you never had any conversation with Mylan
9 personnel about the research, correct?

10 A. I did not interact with Mylan personnel.

11 Q. You never had conversations with the RMMS attorneys
12 about Mylan's research, correct?

13 A. No. We reviewed the development and history report
14 together and went through the content and discussed the
15 meanings of the results.

16 Q. Well, you never asked the attorneys to show you the
17 experimentation performed by Mylan, did you?

18 THE COURT: One second.

19 Yes, Counsel?

20 MR. SALMEN: I would object that this is getting into
21 attorney work product. I mean, I don't understand the basis
22 for this question.

23 THE COURT: I think --

24 MR. SALMEN: What information he's asking of his
25 attorneys.

GREGORY MACMICHAEL, MD - CROSS

1 THE COURT: Understood.

2 Mr. Berl?

3 MR. BERL: First of all, it's not privileged. But
4 second of all, if it were, it's waived because this is right
5 from his deposition.

6 THE COURT: Yeah, I don't believe there is any
7 privilege. He's already testified about it here today, and
8 we've heard from the deposition. I believe it's relevant, as
9 it probes the bases for the doctor's opinions in this case.

10 Objection overruled.

11 BY MR. BERL:

12 Q. Doctor, you never asked the attorneys to show you the
13 experimentation performed by Mylan, correct?

14 A. I was given the Mylan development history report; I
15 didn't have to ask for it. And I read through it, and we had
16 extensive discussions with the attorneys on the content and how
17 the results could be interpreted.

18 Q. Doctor, you assumed that the Mylan attorneys would
19 have access to additional information that you didn't have,
20 right?

21 A. My assumption is yes, they have additional
22 information I'm not privy to.

23 Q. And you believe that the Mylan -- that the research
24 Mylan conducted to obtain its proposed aflibercept formulation
25 was relevant to the analysis you were conducting in this case,

1 right?

2 A. It had some relevancy to it, yes.

3 Q. And you agree that it would be useful?

4 A. The data would be useful.

5 Q. And in retrospect, it would have been beneficial to
6 look at that, right?

7 A. I'm sorry. I did look at it. I don't understand
8 what you're saying. I did look at it.

9 Q. Okay.

10 Let's take a look at the doctor's deposition again.
11 And let's take a look at page 335. Let's start at line 6, go
12 to line 14.

13 "Q Yeah, the research that Mylan conducted
14 to obtain its proposed aflibercept formulation of
15 40 mg/mL, did you think that was relevant to the
16 analysis you were conducting in this case or not
17 relevant?

18 "A It has relevancy. It would be useful.

19 "Q It would be --

20 "A In retrospect, would it be beneficial
21 to take a look at that? Sure."

22 Were those my questions and were those your answers,
23 Doctor?

24 A. They look familiar, yes, they do, Mr. Berl.

25 Q. If you could go back in time and ask Mylan's

1 attorneys whether they had additional information about Mylan's
2 research that led to their proposed aflibercept formulation,
3 maybe you would do that, right?

4 A. I have done that, and I have read through the
5 development history report multiple times and discussed it at
6 length with the RMMS attorneys.

7 Q. Doctor, turning to a separate topic, you didn't
8 identify today any particular formulation that would require
9 undue experimentation to make, correct?

10 A. As opposed to what? With respect to aflibercept or
11 any hypothetical protein or --

12 Q. Within the claims. You didn't identify a formulation
13 that has the ingredients of the claim that would require undue
14 experimentation to make, did you?

15 A. All of those examples are examples. So what we have
16 is maybe 12 recipes making a cake, but you're not telling me
17 how to go about making that cake.

18 Q. Okay. I have a simple question, Doctor.

19 Did you identify -- because I didn't hear it, but
20 tell me if I missed it.

21 Did you identify any particular formulation that has
22 the ingredients required by the claims that, in your view,
23 would require undue experimentation to make?

24 A. If you're asking me just to make that formulation?
25 Is that the question?

1 Q. Yes, Doctor.

2 A. Well, how -- making it and how -- ensuring its
3 stability takes experimentation. I'm not following you.

4 Q. Okay. Doctor, Claim 1 requires a buffer, correct?

5 A. Claim 1 requires a buffer.

6 Is it possible to put the claims up on the screen?

7 Q. Sure. Let me put up the claim that has 1, 2, and 4
8 together.

9 There you go, Doctor.

10 A. Yes. Thank you.

11 Q. Claim 1 requires a buffer, correct?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And buffers refer to a known set of structures,
14 right?

15 A. There's various types of buffers out there, and
16 there's various categories of buffers. There's not one
17 specific category of buffers.

18 Q. Let me try it again.

19 Buffers refers to a known set of structures, right,
20 Doctor?

21 A. No. There's multiple -- there's various types of
22 molecules out there that can function as buffers.

23 Q. Okay. Let's go to the doctor's deposition again at
24 page 428, line 20. Go into 429, line 3.

25 Doctor, I asked you:

1 "Q And I think we've talked about these
2 before, but that was a known set of structures,
3 buffers, right?

4 "A Uh-huh.

5 "Q Yes?

6 "A Yes."

7 Were those my questions and were those your answers,
8 Doctor?

9 A. Yes, they were.

10 Q. Okay. And Claim 1 requires a stabilizing agent,
11 correct?

12 A. Are we going to put the claims back up on the screen?

13 Q. We'll try to do that.

14 You know that Claim 1 requires -- the claims require
15 a stabilizing agent, right, Doctor?

16 A. It states that Claim 1 requires a stabilizing agent.

17 Q. And that's a known set of structures too, right?

18 A. When you say a known set of structures, when you give
19 a specific example, a POSA would know the structure that --
20 when you start talking about various categories, you have to
21 give examples of what those might be.

22 So your question was a buffer is a known set of
23 structures. A buffer is a term that can encompass multiple
24 types of molecules; so maybe -- does the word "buffer" give me
25 the structures? The answer is no.

1 Q. Doctor, I'm asking about the stabilizing agent now.
2 We're past buffers. My question is simple.

3 Stabilizing agent is a known set of structures,
4 right?

5 A. There's multiple molecules that can be used as
6 stabilizing agent. Stabilizing agent is very broad. Sugars
7 are stabilizing agents. Surfactants are stabilizing agents.

8 Q. Is that a known set of structures, Doctor, or not?

9 A. There's multiple sets of structures.

10 Q. So no or yes?

11 A. What I'm saying is this patent fails to define what
12 all the potential structures are.

13 Q. Okay.

14 Let's take a look at the doctor's deposition again,
15 right after where we were, page 429, line 4 down to line 11.

16 "Q Claim 1 requires a stabilizing agent,
17 correct?

18 "A Yes, it does.

19 "Q That's a known set of structures too?

20 "A Well -- I'm going down looking at
21 dependent claims. Yes, it does."

22 Were those my questions and were those your answers?

23 A. Those were my answers.

24 Q. Doctor, Claim 1 recites various structural
25 requirements with respect to both the active ingredient and

1 with respect to excipients.

2 A. I'm sorry. Where are we --

3 Q. Claim 1, Doctor, recites various structural
4 requirements with respect to both the active ingredient and
5 with respect to the excipients, correct?

6 A. I'm getting lost in your question, Mr. Berl.

7 Q. Okay. Here it is. I'll try to do it slow.

8 Claim 1 recites various structural requirements with
9 respect to both the active ingredient and with respect to the
10 excipients, right?

11 A. Are you reading the claims or is this your statement?

12 Q. That's my question.

13 A. Could you repeat it, please.

14 Q. Yes.

15 Claim 1 recites various structural requirements with
16 respect to both the active ingredient and with respect to the
17 excipients?

18 A. Does it require -- yes.

19 Q. If those structural requirements are met, one is --
20 well, sorry.

21 If those structural requirements are not met, one is
22 not within the scope of the claims, right?

23 A. I'm not aware, but that's my understanding.

24 Q. Okay. So each formulation, to your understanding, in
25 order to be within the genus of formulations of Claim 1, must

1 meet every structural requirement of Claim 1, the organic
2 cosolvent, the buffer, the stabilizing agent, and the VEGF
3 antagonist fusion protein with a particular sequence, right?

4 A. Your question was it has to meet all of the criteria
5 in Claim 1? Was that your question?

6 Q. Yes.

7 A. The answer is yes.

8 Q. So all of the formulations within Claim 1 have those
9 structural features, correct?

10 A. No.

11 Q. Okay. Doctor, you talked about the '572 patent for a
12 moment. You have one slide on that, I believe. It's Slide 57.

13 Can we put that up.

14 Now, you understand that the '572 patent priority
15 date is several years after the priority date of the '865
16 patent, right?

17 A. Yes, I do.

18 Q. And the POSA practicing the claims of the '572 patent
19 would not make a new formulation, right; they'd use an existing
20 formulation?

21 A. I cannot read the minds of the inventors, but I'll
22 follow your train of thought.

23 Q. By 2011 many aflibercept formulations were known,
24 right?

25 A. Yes. But you're referring to a patent that obviously

1 had done some variations; so I'm not quite sure where you're
2 heading.

3 Q. You think the '572 patent had made new formulations?

4 A. No. I'd have to pull up the '572 patent and look at
5 it to be able to follow your question.

6 Q. Okay. Doctor, you agree that as of 2011 there were
7 formulations of aflibercept known that the person of skill
8 practicing the '572 patent would use, right?

9 A. As of?

10 Q. 2011 or 2013.

11 A. And if they did have to use what? The '865 patent or
12 the '572?

13 Q. Sure. They could use the '865 patent.

14 A. The '865 is patent is not enabled; so they wouldn't
15 know how to make those buffers.

16 Q. So you don't think that the person of skill could
17 have used the formulations from the '865 patent in practicing
18 the '572 patent?

19 A. They could with a significant amount of work and
20 effort and studies and screening.

21 Q. You haven't asserted that the Dix patent is not
22 enabled, have you?

23 A. Well, let's pull -- I'm not sure -- which Dix patent
24 are you referring to? Doesn't Dix have multiple patents?

25 Q. The Dix '226 patent that you addressed thoroughly in

1 your expert report. You don't think that's not enabled, do
2 you?

3 THE COURT: One second.

4 Yes, Counsel?

5 MR. SALMEN: Objection, Your Honor. It's outside the
6 scope of his direct examination.

7 THE COURT: How is this now -- Mr. Berl, how are we
8 within the scope of his direct?

9 MR. BERL: Because he opined about how the person of
10 skill would practice this -- the Claim 6 of the '572 patent.
11 And he says it would be really hard. It doesn't disclose
12 anything. And I'm exploring what the person of skill actually
13 would have done.

14 THE COURT: Overruled.

15 THE WITNESS: I don't have the '572 patent in front
16 of me; so I'm not going to address the specific detailed
17 content unless we can -- if you have specifics you want to pull
18 up.

19 Can you rephrase your question again.

20 BY MR. BERL:

21 Q. Sure.

22 A. I'm trying to answer your question, but I just want
23 to get a little more --

24 Q. I think I asked you whether the person of skill
25 practicing the '572 patent would use the '865 patent

1 formulations which have been published by that point. And you
2 said no because they're not enabled.

3 Are we with each other so far?

4 A. What I said is -- you said, well, they can just use
5 one of the buffers in the '865 patent. And I said no, they're
6 not enabled.

7 Q. That's not what I said, but let me try it again to
8 make sure we're on the same page.

9 A. Let's try it again.

10 Q. In your view, would the person of skill practicing
11 the '572 patent in 2011 or 2013 use as an ophthalmologic
12 formulation the formulations disclosed in the '865 patent which
13 had published by that time?

14 A. They may have. I don't know that they would have,
15 but they would certainly -- especially because the patents were
16 issued to the same company, one would expect that they were
17 using it at least as a reference document.

18 Q. And they could use the Dix patent too which was also
19 issued to the same company, Regeneron, correct?

20 A. Yeah. One would expect, with the normal business
21 practice, to be referring to your own internal prior art.

22 Q. And it's not your view that the POSA would have had a
23 preference for one of those formulations from the '865 patent
24 or the Dix patent over the others in practicing the '865
25 patent, right?

1 A. I would expect that Regeneron personnel might have
2 had some preferences. But you're asking me to ask if a
3 hypothetical POSA would have a preferred buffer? I can't
4 answer what the hypothetical POSA would want.

5 Q. So you have no -- as someone who opined on the '572
6 patent as to what formulation in 2011 the POSA would have
7 wanted to use for treating ophthalmic diseases using
8 aflibercept, right?

9 A. Well, yes. What we're highlighting here is one of --
10 they're called the quantity attributes of the final product.
11 One of the characteristics. Yes, you'd want an isotonic
12 solution that's physiological with respect to the eye.

13 Q. Let me try that question again.

14 Do you have an opinion about whether the POSA would
15 prefer one formulation in the prior art, such as Dix, or a
16 different formulation, such as one of the '865 formulations?

17 THE COURT: One second.

18 Yes?

19 MR. SALMEN: Your Honor, I'd just renew my objection.
20 This goes to the obviousness analysis. And Dr. MacMichael had
21 testified here with regard to a written description of the '572
22 patent, but we're going way far afield of any opinion that was
23 disclosed in his reports or during direct examination.

24 MR. BERL: I disagree. He's talking about how the
25 person of skill would practice this. He says basically the

1 person of skill could practice this. I don't see how they
2 would.

3 THE COURT: And I disagree.

4 Sustained.

5 BY MR. BERL:

6 Q. Now, Doctor, let me ask you about one final topic,
7 which is indefiniteness.

8 A. May I correct your inaccurate quote of what I said?

9 Q. No.

10 THE COURT: No. I sustained the objection, Doctor.
11 So moving forward.

12 BY MR. BERL:

13 Q. Finally, I want to address indefiniteness.

14 You're not an expert about the medical aspect of
15 whether something is suitable for intravitreal administration,
16 correct?

17 A. I am a development and manufacturing expert. I do
18 work very closely with colleagues that are physicians. And so
19 I do have an understanding of what's acceptable from working
20 with physicians and regulatory and quality members. You're
21 never an individual working alone; you're working with a team.

22 Q. Right. But you on your own don't have that knowledge
23 of what excipients or what formulations would be suitable for
24 intravitreal administration, right?

25 A. I am not an ophthalmologist.

1 Q. And you on your own don't have that knowledge of what
2 excipients or what formulations would be suitable for
3 intravitreal administration, right?

4 A. I have a working knowledge of what excipients and
5 which buffers, et cetera, are acceptable in the human body from
6 all the multiple products I've developed over my career.

7 Q. I'm asking about intravitreal formulations, Doctor.
8 Let me try it one more time.

9 You on your own don't have that knowledge of what
10 excipients or what formulations would be suitable for
11 intravitreal administration, right?

12 A. It's available in the literature.

13 Q. But you would -- you said at your deposition you
14 would consult other people on a team who have that expertise,
15 like ophthalmologists?

16 A. Yes. That's what I just said.

17 Q. Okay. But you didn't consult with an ophthalmologist
18 in preparing your expert reports as to the '865 patent, right?

19 A. No, I didn't consult with an ophthalmologist.

20 Q. And you didn't consult with a toxicologist?

21 A. No, I did not consult with a toxicologist.

22 Q. You didn't interact or consult with anyone other than
23 the attorneys in connection with your opinions in this case,
24 right?

25 A. I was asked questions that were related to my

1 background and expertise in how to manufacture and formulate
2 drug products.

3 Q. You understand, Doctor, that the issue of
4 indefiniteness is whether the POSA would understand the scope
5 of the claims, right?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And the POSA would understand the scope of the '865
8 patent claims, right?

9 A. They would understand that they're very broad and
10 open, using the term "comprised" in multiple claims.

11 Q. But they would understand the scope of the claims,
12 right, Doctor?

13 A. No, they wouldn't, because the scope of the claims is
14 extremely broad and they're open-ended.

15 Q. Doctor, you're a POSA and you understand the scope of
16 the claims, right?

17 A. No. I believe the scope of many of the claims is --
18 because it uses the term "comprises" and gives several examples
19 but it's open-ended. So it's not narrow. It's very broad.

20 Q. Okay.

21 Let's take a look at the doctor's deposition
22 hopefully one last time, page 486, line 21, through 487,
23 line 1.

24 Doctor, I asked:

25 "Q And the POSA would understand the scope

1 of the claims?

2 "A Well, I am a POSA, and I understand
3 this."

4 Was that my question and was that your answer?

5 A. Yes. The scope of the claims is open-ended and
6 broad.

7 Q. Thank you.

8 MR. BERL: No further questions at this time.

9 THE COURT: Thank you.

10 Counsel, I assume redirect would be longer than five
11 minutes?

12 MR. SALMEN: Unfortunately, yes, Your Honor.

13 THE COURT: Well, I wasn't going to put an adjective
14 on it.

15 Doctor, we're going to break for the day. You remain
16 midstream in your testimony; so that means you get through the
17 evening without anyone bothering you.

18 THE WITNESS: Being a lonely guy.

19 THE COURT: You do. You are alone. Whether you
20 prefer that or not, I'll leave to you. I won't ask. But just
21 so you understand, no one can talk to you about your testimony
22 because you remain midstream.

23 We'll resume at 9:00 tomorrow.

24 You can go ahead and step down, sir.

25 THE WITNESS: Thank you, Your Honor.

1 THE COURT: Thank you.

2 It was my understanding this was Mylan's last witness
3 in this phase of the case; is that correct?

4 MS. MAZZOCHI: Yes, Your Honor. This is going to be
5 Mylan's last witness as part of its invalidity/infringement
6 response. We do have one live witness for sure, Dr. Hofmann,
7 who is going to be responding to their witness on commercial
8 success.

9 Whether we need to bring Dr. Albini or Dr. Stewart
10 back after we hear from Dr. Csaky, for example, or any of the
11 other witnesses, particularly on the issue of secondary
12 considerations, we don't know. We're hoping we don't have to.
13 But one of the things that I certainly would say, though, Your
14 Honor, in terms of timing, again, we're very concerned that
15 Regeneron has been really stacking up a lot --

16 THE COURT: The timekeepers are keeping track of it,
17 Counsel. We are where we are. I've told you guys how much
18 time you have.

19 MS. MAZZOCHI: We're on track. I just don't want to
20 get stuck.

21 There are a couple things, though, Your Honor, that
22 have come up, and I did want to preview them for you because
23 I'd like to get some guidance.

24 THE COURT: I don't need a preview at this point,
25 Counsel. We're going to break for the day. I'm just trying to

1 get a good feel for where we're headed. We can take those
2 issues up at 9:00 tomorrow morning just before the doctor
3 resumes his testimony.

4 MS. MAZZOCHI: That's fine. Thank you, Your Honor.

5 THE COURT: Is Regeneron's plan still the same,
6 Ms. Chu, Dr. Csaky, Dr. Trout. And if Mr. Graham and
7 Mr. Manning are doctors, I apologize to those witnesses.

8 MR. BERL: Dr. Graham will be after Dr. Chu.

9 THE COURT: The order was --

10 MR. BERL: The order was not --

11 THE COURT: Okay.

12 MR. BERL: But we're calling those people.

13 THE COURT: Understood.

14 All right. We're going to break for the day. I'll
15 see everyone at 9:00 tomorrow.

16 (Proceedings concluded at 5:22 p.m.)

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

1 CERTIFICATE

2 I, Cindy L. Knecht, Registered Professional Reporter and
3 Official Reporter of the United States District Court for the
4 Northern District of West Virginia, do hereby certify that the
5 foregoing is a true and correct transcript of the proceedings
6 had in the above-styled action on June 20, 2023, as reported by
7 me in stenotypy.

8 I certify that the transcript fees and format comply with
9 those prescribed by the Court and the Judicial Conference of
10 the United States.

11 Given under my hand this 20th day of June 2023.

12 /s/Cindy L. Knecht

13 _____
14 Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR
15 Official reporter, United States
16 District Court for the Northern
17 District of West Virginia
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT
NORTHERN DISTRICT OF WEST VIRGINIA

Regeneron Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

Plaintiff,

VS.

CIVIL ACTION NO.

1:22-cv-61

Mylan Pharmaceuticals, Inc., and

Biocon Biologics,

Volume 7

Defendants.

- - -

Proceedings had in the bench trial of the above-styled action on June 21, 2023, before Honorable Thomas S. Klee District Judge, at Clarksburg, West Virginia.

- - -

APPEARANCES:

On behalf of the Plaintiff:

David I. Berl
Ellen E. Oberwetter
Arthur J. Argall, III
Kathryn S. Kayali
Andrew V. Trask
Williams & Connolly, LLP
680 Maine Avenue, SW
Washington, D.C. 20024
202.434.5000

Andrew E. Goldsmith
Kellogg, Hansen, Todd, Figel & Frederick, PLLC
1615 M. Street NW, Suite 400
Washington, DC 20036
202.326.7945

APPEARANCES CONTINUED ON NEXT PAGE

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 On behalf of the Plaintiff, continued:

2 Steven Robert Ruby
3 Carey, Douglas, Kessler & Ruby, PLLC
4 797 Virginia Street, East, Suite 901
5 Charleston, WV 25301
6 304.345.1234

7 Petra Scamborova
8 Regeneron Pharmaceuticals, Inc.
9 777 Old Saw Mill River Road
10 Tarrytown, NY 10591-6717
11 914.847.7611

12 On behalf of the Defendant:

13 Deanne M. Mazzochi
14 William A. Rakoczy
15 Heinz J. Salmen
16 Eric R. Hunt
17 Lauren M. Lesko
18 Neil B. McLaughlin
19 Lawrence Scott Beall
20 Katie A. Boda
21 Rakoczy, Molino, Mazzochi & Siwik, LLP
22 6 W. Hubbard Street, Suite 500
23 Chicago, IL 60654
24 312.527.2157

25 Gordon H. Copland
William J. O'Brien
Steptoe & Johnson
400 White Oaks Blvd.
Bridgeport, WV 26330
304.933.8162

Proceedings recorded utilizing realtime translation.
Transcript produced by computer-aided transcription.

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

Wednesday Afternoon Session,
June 21, 2023, 9:00 a.m.

- - -

THE COURT: Day seven, I think, we convene for trial. Counsel is present. Dr. MacMichael is on the stand. I believe we're ready for redirect.

Is that correct, Counsel?

Madam Court Reporter is ready. You may proceed.

MR. SALMEN: Yes, Your Honor. For the first portion of my redirect, I'm probably going to have to get into some information that has been designated confidential. So pursuant to your previous order, we ask for a sealed courtroom.

THE COURT: Understood.

In an effort to get everyone their steps in early this morning, those of you not permitted to be here under the Court's protective order, if I could ask you to step out. We would certainly appreciate it.

We'll also ask the court security, once those folks have vacated the premises, to seal our courtroom, please. Thank you so much.

(The following proceedings (1527/23 to 1533/12) were had under seal, and are filed under separate cover.)

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1

2

3

4

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

(Courtroom unsealed.)

13

THE COURT: Welcome back, everybody.

14

Counsel, you may proceed.

15

MR. SALMEN: Thank you, Your Honor.

16

BY MR. SALMEN:

17

Q. Dr. MacMichael, do you recall Mr. Berl asking you the question "Polysorbate in Claim 1 is being used as a surface-active agent to prevent aggregation and denaturation?"

18

19

A. I don't recall the specific question.

20

21

Q. That appears at trial transcript page 1455. Why don't we put that on the screen to refresh your recollection.

22

I'll give you a moment to read that.

23

A. Yes.

24

Q. Do you recall this question?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Let's take a look at the '865 patent Claim 1, please.

3 Claim 1 of the '865 patent does not require
4 polysorbate, does it?

5 A. It does not call out polysorbate.

6 Q. Dr. MacMichael, you were asked about Dr. Rabinow's
7 testimony. And to refresh your recollection, let's pull up
8 page 1482 to 1483.

9 Do you recall being shown this testimony from
10 Dr. Rabinow?

11 A. Yes, I do.

12 Q. And you see here Dr. Rabinow was being asked about
13 optimizing the stability of a protein formulation, a single
14 formulation, right?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Were you asked to provide an opinion regarding
17 whether the patent enables just a single formulation or whether
18 the patent enables the full scope of the universe of
19 formulations covered by the asserted claims?

20 A. Yes, I was asked.

21 Q. Were you asked whether the patent enables a single
22 formulation or whether the patent enables the full scope of
23 formulations covered by the asserted claims?

24 A. I apologize. I can't recall the specificity of that
25 question, but I can answer the question. But I believe it does

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 not give a description on how to make multiple formulations.

2 Q. Thank you.

3 Now, Dr. MacMichael, Mr. Berl asked you about undue
4 experimentation and your interpretation of that term. Do you
5 remember those questions?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. Now, you've formed an opinion regarding the amounts
8 of experimentation required to practice the full scope of the
9 asserted claims; is that correct?

10 A. Correct.

11 Q. What level of experimentation, in your opinion, is
12 required for the person of ordinary skill in the art to
13 practice the full scope of the asserted claims?

14 A. It would take a significant amount of
15 experimentation.

16 Q. When you previously suggested that -- I'm sorry.
17 What was the term you used?

18 A. I used "significant" as opposed to "undue."

19 Q. Okay. When you previously suggested that significant
20 experimentation would be necessary, do you consider significant
21 experimentation to be undue in view of the full scope -- the
22 full scope of the '865 patent claims?

23 A. Yeah. I remember we had quite some discussion on
24 that.

25 Undue means so much experimentation that you wouldn't

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 be able to achieve it. What I was testifying yesterday is it
2 would be a significant amount of work, whether it was undue,
3 but it would take a lot of work on the part of the formulation
4 department. So --

5 Q. Now, Doctor -- I'm sorry.

6 A. I was just going to say whether you call that undue
7 or significant is a relative term.

8 Q. Dr. MacMichael, you were also asked by Mr. Berl
9 whether you identified any formulation that you would not be
10 able to make.

11 Do you recall those questions?

12 A. Yes.

13 Q. And is that the evaluation that you were asked to
14 make in determining enablement, whether you could not make a
15 certain formulation, or were you asked to form an opinion
16 regarding whether the skilled person could practice the full
17 scope of the claims?

18 A. I don't know if I can get to the specifics of the
19 question of how -- what was asked yesterday, but the second
20 part of the question was?

21 Q. Were you asked whether the skilled person could
22 practice the full scope of the asserted claims?

23 A. I believe I was.

24 Q. Dr. MacMichael, you were also asked about the
25 Kaisheva reference. Do you remember that one?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. And in this line of questions Mr. Berl suggested that
3 the '865 patent informed the skilled person of an optimum pH
4 for the formulations in the asserted claims.

5 Do you recall that?

6 A. Yes, I do.

7 Q. And that appears for the record at trial transcript
8 pages 1488 to 1489.

9 Now, let's take a look at the '865 patent, Claim 1,
10 Dr. MacMichael.

11 Dr. MacMichael, is Claim 1 limited to a formulation
12 with a pH of 6.2 to 6.3?

13 A. No.

14 Q. The full scope of the formulation pH under Claim 1
15 would be much broader, right?

16 A. Well, it's not -- I don't see a definition for the
17 value of the pH in Claim 1, so one would assume it's broad.

18 Q. Now, let's take a look at Claim 4.

19 Is Claim 4 limited to a specific pH?

20 A. No.

21 Q. Let's take a look at Claim 5. Is Claim 5 limited to
22 a specific pH?

23 A. No.

24 Q. Let's take a look at the Kaisheva reference, Claim 1
25 of Kaisheva. This is DTX 3610, page 20 to 21. There is a copy

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 of it, Dr. MacMichael, in your cross-examination binder,
2 Volume 1, if that helps.

3 A. That's Volume 2. I'm sorry. Could you give me
4 the --

5 Q. Yes. DTX 3610. And I think Mr. Gibson has it up on
6 the screen now.

7 A. Okay. Okay.

8 Q. And you see there in the third line of Claim 1 it
9 reads "About 5 to 25 millimolar histidine buffer, having a pH
10 from about 5.5 to 6.5."

11 Do you see that?

12 A. Yes, I do.

13 Q. So, Dr. MacMichael, does the claim in the Kaisheva
14 reference identify the specific pH range?

15 A. Yes, it does -- it uses the term "about." Yes, it
16 does. It gives 5.5 to about 6.5.

17 Q. Right. And we don't see that specificity in the
18 '865 patent Claims 4 or 5, right?

19 A. No.

20 Q. Okay.

21 We can take that down.

22 Dr. MacMichael, you recall when Mr. Berl asked you
23 about certain internal documents from Regeneron where they used
24 the term "cosolvent," right?

25 A. Yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 MR. SALMEN: And for the record, Your Honor, this is
2 at trial transcript pages 1476.

3 BY MR. SALMEN:

4 Q. Dr. MacMichael, you provided your opinion in this
5 case that polysorbate 20 is not -- sorry.

6 And you provided your opinion in this case that
7 polysorbate 20 is not an organic cosolvent in Mylan's product
8 under the Court's claim construction, right?

9 A. That's correct.

10 Q. Okay.

11 Mr. Gibson, you can take that down.

12 Were Mr. Berl's questions regarding the internal
13 Regeneron documents specific to the Court's claim construction?

14 A. I don't believe so.

15 Q. Do you have any idea whether Regeneron was applying
16 the Court's claim construction when it used the term
17 "cosolvent" in those internal documents?

18 A. No. I don't know the mind of the Regeneron
19 personnel.

20 Q. And would the person of ordinary skill in the art
21 have access to the Regeneron internal documents?

22 A. Well, they're internal documents. They're
23 confidential.

24 Q. Thank you.

25 Now, Dr. MacMichael, I'd like to ask you about when

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Mr. Berl asked you several questions about preventing
2 aggregation using polysorbate. And I want to first ask you to
3 consider a hypothetical formulation of aflibercept without
4 polysorbate.

5 A. Okay.

6 Q. Are you with me?

7 A. Yes, I am.

8 Q. That solution would have to be in some kind of a
9 container, right?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. And I believe you testified yesterday that protein
12 interactions with the surface of the container or interactions
13 with the air can result in protein adsorption which can lead to
14 aggregation. Was that right?

15 A. Yes. And denaturation.

16 Q. And denaturation. If I had the same solution in
17 three different containers -- one in a smooth glass, a second
18 in a jagged plastic container, and a third in a completely
19 rubber container -- are you still with me?

20 A. Yes, I am.

21 Q. The propensity for the protein to aggregate in those
22 various containers is going to be different, right?

23 A. Yes, it will be.

24 Q. Now, if I pick the best container, the one where the
25 protein showed the least amount of aggregation -- let's say the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 glass. Okay? And I put my solutions in only glass, I would
2 have reduced the propensity for the protein to aggregate by
3 eliminating the rubber or the jagged plastic, right?

4 A. What you're saying -- you're saying -- through
5 experimentation, we demonstrated that we saw a greater
6 propensity in one container versus another? Is that your
7 question?

8 Q. Yes.

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. And so by putting it in the best container, I would
11 have reduced the propensity for the protein to aggregate now
12 that it's in the glass, right?

13 MR. BERL: Objection, Your Honor. This is leading.

14 THE COURT: Sustained.

15 BY MR. SALMEN:

16 Q. So, Dr. MacMichael, would you equate removing the
17 rubber interface which reduced the likelihood of protein to
18 aggregate the equivalent of using a cosolvent to increase the
19 protein solubility?

20 A. No, because if you start getting aggregation, that
21 container, once -- you might change the rate -- depending on
22 the container without polysorbate -- and, again, we're talking
23 hypothetical experimentation here -- once you initiated
24 aggregation, if you're going to see aggregation lesser in the
25 glass and faster in the rubber, ultimately, in the glass you're

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 still going to get -- hint at the final amount of aggregation.
2 So the rate might be different. So you'd need to add a
3 surfactant whether using glass or rubber to prevent that
4 aggregation.

5 Q. And would the fact that the surface is glass versus
6 rubber be the equivalent of adding a cosolvent to increase
7 solubility of the protein?

8 A. Well, first of all, adding a cosolvent -- we're using
9 a generic term -- "cosolvent" here -- to increase solubility?

10 Q. Yes.

11 A. The answer would be no.

12 Q. Thank you.

13 I think you also testified in response to Mr. Berl's
14 questions that adding hydrochloric acid to protein solutions
15 might cause aggregation by denaturing the protein; is that
16 right?

17 A. Yes. When you're adjusting the pH of a protein
18 solution, you have to be very careful that there's not -- as
19 you're adding it, that there's not high concentrations of acid
20 before it diffuses. In those areas, you can get denaturation.

21 Q. But would you then say that not adding hydrochloric
22 acid to my formulation would be the equivalent of using a
23 cosolvent to increase solubility?

24 A. No. It's two different things. The hydrochloric
25 acid would be a denaturing agent. And not using the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 hydrochloric acid doesn't make it equivalent to using a
2 surfactant if that is the question.

3 Q. Thank you, Dr. MacMichael.

4 Last questions here, Dr. MacMichael.

5 You recall the analogy Mr. Berl presented to you
6 about driving your separate cars through a snowstorm, right?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Let me pose a similar hypothetical. But in mine
9 let's put the person skilled in the art of driving in snowy
10 conditions behind the wheel of the car. Okay?

11 Now, a person skilled in the art of driving through
12 snow would know that having a good set of snow tires on your
13 car is going to make that car sufficiently stable in the event
14 a snowstorm does occur, right?

15 A. Correct.

16 Q. And the skilled person might even have studded snow
17 tires which have been road tested and proven to be sufficiently
18 stable in pretty serious weather conditions, right?

19 A. Correct.

20 Q. And the skilled person of driving in the snow would
21 know the snow tires alone would be sufficient to prevent the
22 car from sliding off the road, right?

23 A. Correct.

24 Q. So adding chains on top of those snow tires would
25 merely provide the skilled person some added assurance; isn't

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 that right?

2 A. Correct.

3 MR. SALMEN: That's the end of my redirect, Your
4 Honor.

5 THE COURT: Thank you, Counsel.

6 Recross?

7 MR. BERL: Your Honor, I was going to start where
8 Mr. Salmen started; but, unfortunately, that's the confidential
9 document.

10 THE COURT: No. Understood.

11 Time for more steps, everyone. I'd like to ask you
12 to step out of the courtroom and ask court security to seal our
13 courtroom once everyone's had a chance to depart.

14 (The following proceedings (1544/16 to 1550/4) were
15 had under seal, and are filed under separate cover.)

16

17

18

19

20

21

22

23

24

25

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25

(Courtroom unsealed.)

THE COURT: Thank you, Officer.

Mr. Berl, you may proceed.

BY MR. BERL:

Q. Do you recall a few moments ago you were asked questions about the pH range and whether the claims in the '865 patent were limited to a particular pH range?

A. I recall the questioning around the pH, yes.

Q. You agree that the specification limits the formulation pH to within the range of 5.8 to 7, right?

A. If you could pull up the claims and the specifications, I'd like to see them so I can confirm.

Q. Let's just pull up your expert report, your reply report, PTX 62. This is your reply expert report, sir, correct?

A. I believe so, yes.

Q. And in the second to last bullet point on page 10 it says, "The pH. The specification only limits the formulation of pH to within the wide range of 5.8 and 7.0."

Do you see that?

A. Yes, I do.

Q. And that's a correct statement, right?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. I made it.

2 Q. Now, finally, I want to ask you about the testimony
3 you gave about trying to distinguish between a formulation and
4 whether that's routine to make and multiple formulations.

5 Do you recall that in Mr. Salmen's questioning of
6 you?

7 A. Yes, I do.

8 Q. Doctor, just so everyone's clear, your opinion is
9 that protein formulations are routinely optimized to improve
10 the stability of their active ingredients, correct?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Not a protein formulation; protein formulations.
13 Right?

14 A. When I said protein formulations, I was talking about
15 the body of biotechnology and multiple companies and multiple
16 products. That's why I used the term in plural. Formulations
17 require significant amount of work. That was what I was
18 referring to.

19 Q. Okay. So final question. Protein formulations are
20 routinely optimized to improve the stability of their active
21 ingredients.

22 Do I have that right?

23 A. That's a fair statement.

24 MR. BERL: No more questions, Your Honor.

25 THE COURT: Rereredirect.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 MR. SALMEN: No questions, Your Honor.

2 THE COURT: All right. Do we have any exhibits that
3 we need to -- one second, Doctor. Sorry.

4 MR. BERL: I just have two, Your Honor. I imagine
5 Mr. Salmen has a lot more than that. So maybe I'll just get my
6 two done, which are PTX 672 and PTX 1948.

7 THE COURT: Understood.

8 Any objection to those two documents?

9 MR. SALMEN: Let me just check, please.

10 THE COURT: Sure.

11 MR. SALMEN: Actually, Your Honor, we do object to
12 admitting those documents into evidence with this expert.
13 Those are the two Regeneron internal documents that
14 Dr. MacMichael stated he had not seen before. I don't think
15 this is the witness to properly authenticate those documents.

16 THE COURT: Mr. Berl.

17 MR. BERL: Yes, Your Honor. We can admit them
18 through someone else, but the point is we've been admitting
19 throughout the trial cross-examination testimony or -- and the
20 associated documents.

21 THE COURT: Is there any suggestion that these
22 documents are not actually authentic? That is a low
23 evidentiary hurdle the opponent has to climb over.

24 MR. SALMEN: We have no objection to their
25 authenticity, Your Honor. It's just -- and that was not the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 basis of the objection, but these --

2 THE COURT: Then what is the basis?

3 MR. SALMEN: The lack of foundation with this expert.

4 THE COURT: With respect to authenticity. What other
5 foundation? They were used to cross the bases of the doctor's
6 many opinions, correct, Mr. Berl?

7 MR. SALMEN: I'll withdraw the objection, Your Honor.

8 THE COURT: With objection withdrawn, both of those
9 exhibits are hereby deemed admitted.

10 And, Counsel, if you want to review your list very
11 slowly, please.

12 (PTX 672 and PTX 1948 were admitted.)

13 MR. SALMEN: Yes. I'll go through them slowly, Your
14 Honor. DTX 0007, DTX 0030, DTX 2687, DTX 3463, DTX 3465,
15 DTX 3466, DTX 4116, DTX 4229, DTX 4430, DTX 5011, DTX 5012,
16 DTX 5053, DTX 5172, DTX 5196, DTX 5273, DTX 7087, DTX 8206,
17 DTX 8207, DTX 8208, and DTX 8209.

18 THE COURT: Any objection to any of those items on
19 the list?

20 MR. BERL: No, Your Honor.

21 THE COURT: Without objection, each of those shall be
22 deemed admitted.

23 (DTX 0007, DTX 0030, DTX 2687, DTX 3463, DTX 3465,
24 DTX 3466, DTX 4116, DTX 4229, DTX 4430, DTX 5011, DTX 5012,
25 DTX 5053, DTX 5172, DTX 5196, DTX 5273, DTX 7087, DTX 8206,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 DTX 8207, DTX 8208, and DTX 8209 were admitted.)

2 THE COURT: Anything further we need from the good
3 doctor?

4 MR. SALMEN: No, Your Honor.

5 THE COURT: All right. Doctor, thank you so much,
6 sir. You can step down. I throw you back into the waters.
7 They're free to talk to you again.

8 THE WITNESS: Thank you.

9 THE COURT: Mylan may call its next witness.

10 MS. MAZZOCHI: Your Honor, Mylan does not have any
11 further live witnesses for its case in chief. I did, however,
12 before we closed yesterday we had talked about introducing
13 exhibits that were raised by Regeneron at Dr. Stewart's cross.

14 THE COURT: Correct.

15 MS. MAZZOCHI: We would like to move into evidence
16 PTX 3348, which is one of his publications that was used on
17 cross.

18 THE COURT: Any objection to 3348?

19 MR. GREGORY: No objection.

20 THE COURT: Without objection, 3348 deemed admitted.
21 (PTX 3348 was admitted.)

22 THE COURT: Were there any other loose ends from
23 Dr. Stewart's testimony in terms of exhibits?

24 MS. MAZZOCHI: I don't believe so. I think we got
25 all the rest of his exhibits into evidence.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 THE COURT: Okay. Understood.

2 Regeneron, any remaining?

3 MR. GREGORY: Yes, Your Honor. Given that they're
4 moving 448, I'd like to take an opportunity to go back and take
5 a look at the other exhibits moved on cross and see if you
6 wanted to move a couple of those into evidence as well.

7 THE COURT: Continue to have Dr. Stewart's exhibits
8 at loose end then. That's fine.

9 So Mylan is resting its case in chief, correct?

10 MS. MAZZOCHI: Yes. With that, Your Honor, we would
11 rest our case in chief. And then as we had indicated
12 yesterday, however, Mylan does have some objections to the
13 witnesses and some of the deposition designations that
14 Regeneron is proposing to offer today.

15 I believe one of their next witnesses was going to be
16 Ms. Chu. There were objections that we had to Regeneron
17 calling her in her individual capacity to talk on particular
18 topics. I believe we filed a motion on that this morning.

19 THE COURT: I believe that you did, 6:49 a.m. It's
20 21 pages in length with attachments.

21 MS. MAZZOCHI: Yes. And I can certainly summarize
22 briefly what the issues are. And it's basically this.

23 THE COURT: Let's pause on that.

24 Given that Mylan has rested, are there any motions
25 from Regeneron at this juncture?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 We'll come back to that.

2 MR. BERL: Yes, Your Honor. Regeneron moves for
3 judgment under Rule 52(c). I understand, Your Honor, that this
4 is a bench trial; so I'll be brief.

5 But I would note that beginning with the formulation
6 case, as it relates to invalidity, Mylan's combinations are
7 plainly deficient. Even taking their expert's testimony as
8 true, he failed to show multiple limitations of the claim were
9 met by the asserted combinations, including, but not limited
10 to, the requirement of an ophthalmologic formulation, which is
11 present in neither Fraser nor the Liu reference with which it
12 was combined; and the at least 98 percent native conformation
13 limitation, which is not present with respect to aflibercept in
14 any of their combinations and is not even tested for any
15 product or any molecule or any formulation with respect to the
16 combination of Fraser and Lucentis.

17 Absent a showing that all limitations of the claim,
18 the claim as a whole, is obvious, an obviousness case simply
19 cannot succeed.

20 With respect to the Dix reference, Mylan advanced no
21 evidence, zero, that the Dix application and the application at
22 issue here were not commonly owned or were not subject to a
23 common assignment by the same company, Regeneron. It's clear
24 from the face of that; they're all Regeneron's applications.
25 And, accordingly, under 35 U.S.C. 103(c), it cannot be used as

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 prior art for purposes of obviousness.

2 With respect to anticipation of Dix, even taking as
3 true everything their expert Dr. Rabinow said, regarding the
4 40 mg/mL limitation of the claim, it's just not there. He
5 relies only on the disclosure of 10 to 50 mg/mL, a range which
6 is not directed to aflibercept.

7 But in any event, the law is clear. Disclosure of a
8 range is not the disclosure of any number within that range,
9 and any anticipation argument that Mylan attempts to advance
10 simply is inconsistent with that controlling precedent, and so
11 it cannot succeed either.

12 Now, with respect to Section 112, Your Honor just
13 heard Dr. MacMichael, and the testimony was clear. He had
14 numerous opportunities, both on cross-examination and again
15 this morning on redirect, to tell Your Honor that the
16 experimentation to practice the claim was undue. He repeatedly
17 declined. And that's the standard from the *Wands* case all the
18 way down to *Alcon v. Barr*. It's routine experimentation or
19 undue experimentation.

20 They had two experts testify. We haven't gone yet,
21 of course. Their first expert, Dr. Rabinow, said it's routine.
22 Their second expert didn't disagree with that, and he doesn't
23 say it's undue experimentation either. You can't have an
24 enablement case without undue experimentation, and there's no
25 evidence that there is.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 With respect to written description, he likewise
2 agreed that this claim recites structure and it's structurally
3 limited. The buffer is a known set of structures. The
4 stabilizing agent is a known set of structures. The organic
5 cosolvent in Claim 4 limited to polysorbate, that's a known
6 structure. The active ingredient, aflibercept, that's a known
7 structure.

8 These are known structures. A written description
9 case cannot lie where you are reciting structures in your claim
10 because the test for written description is whether a person of
11 skill can envisage or envision what you're claiming. Can they
12 recognize what it is?

13 And all of the foundational case from the Federal
14 Circuit, beginning with the *Wyeth* case and rapamycin all the
15 way to their en banc *Lilly v. Ariad* case stand for the
16 proposition that you can't just claim function, you can't say I
17 claim anything that will work without regard to what structures
18 it is, because the person of skill can't envision what
19 structures you are claiming.

20 That's not what we have here, according to
21 Dr. MacMichael himself. We have structures that are being
22 claimed. And Your Honor will search in vain for any claim that
23 is limited to structure which the Federal Circuit has said
24 doesn't meet the written description requirement in a situation
25 like this because, of course, you can envision is. He agreed

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 it's limited to structures.

2 The structures are known. And so it's, by
3 definition, something that the skilled artisan can envision.
4 They know this is in or this is out. If it doesn't have a
5 stabilizing agent, it's out. If it has one, it meets that
6 limitation. This is not some amorphous effort to claim only
7 function; and therefore, the written description requirement is
8 met as a matter of law.

9 Finally, with respect to indefiniteness,
10 Dr. MacMichael agreed that the person of ordinary skill can
11 understand the claims. He agreed that he lacks the expertise
12 to determine what is suitable and what is not suitable. And he
13 didn't consult with anyone, such as an ophthalmologist, who
14 would have that expertise.

15 So I submit, Your Honor, that we should have judgment
16 with regard to invalidity.

17 Regarding infringement, I actually think there are
18 not many factual disputes here between Dr. Trout and
19 Dr. MacMichael. Everyone agrees that, if you have polysorbate
20 in the formulation that Mylan has, more of the aflibercept
21 would be in solution under various conditions, conditions that
22 Your Honor has heard from every witness in the case are
23 important, such as going through the needle and creating the
24 shear stress that can make things fall out of solution.

25 THE COURT: Let me ask you this, Mr. Berl. Does the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 label applied to polysorbate 20 matter? Is that a significant
2 issue or dispute?

3 MR. BERL: No.

4 THE COURT: Why not?

5 MR. BERL: The reason is that the question under the
6 Court's claim construction is does it increase the solubility
7 of the aflibercept?

8 It doesn't matter whether someone labels it a
9 stabilizing agent, a surfactant, or an organic cosolvent. The
10 reason is those are words. Words don't matter. Actions
11 matter. Is it actually increasing the solubility?

12 And Dr. MacMichael's own Graph 34 showed that it is.
13 Without polysorbate, it was going down like this. And I'm
14 showing for the record the curve where it's crashing out of
15 solution in the black on Slide 34. And he showed with
16 polysorbate, more is in solution. He agreed that that's what
17 happened, and Dr. Trout says that's what happened.

18 You could call it a stabilizing agent, a surfactant.
19 You can call it a duck. All that matters under Your Honor's
20 construction is is there more polysorbate -- is there more
21 aflibercept in solution with polysorbate than without? The
22 answer to that question I would say undisputedly, according to
23 this record, is yes.

24 I would also observe that "stabilizing agent" is a
25 general term. And one needs to ask what is it stabilizing

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 against? And I think both experts agreed what it's stabilizing
2 against is aggregation. And if it stabilizes against
3 aggregation, both experts testified clearly that aggregation
4 then leads to precipitation, which is the opposite of
5 solubility. You're either in solution or you precipitated out
6 of solution.

7 I don't think there's anything at all inconsistent
8 with calling this a stabilizing agent. That's not a problem
9 because it's stabilizing against it coming out of solution.
10 Put another way, it's stopping it from coming out of solution;
11 it's keeping it in solution. It is increasing the solubility
12 because there will be more with polysorbate in solution than
13 without polysorbate under various relevant conditions such as
14 shear stress.

15 So I don't think the label matters. As I've said
16 repeatedly, this is not some anthropomorphic exercise where the
17 polysorbate is running around saying, "I wonder what someone
18 calls me." That's not going on here.

19 We know what it's doing. It's stopping aggregation;
20 it's stopping precipitation; it's keeping the aflibercept in
21 solution. That's what the claim requires, more in solution
22 with than without and under relevant conditions.

23 I think both experts agreed. You can look at
24 Slide 34. That's exactly what's going on. Y axis there is
25 solubility of the aflibercept. If there's more with

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 polysorbate than without, I think that ends the infringement
2 inquiry, respectfully.

3 With respect to the method of treatment, happy to
4 answer any other questions Your Honor has.

5 THE COURT: Go ahead.

6 MR. BERL: With respect to the method of treatment,
7 Your Honor, we explained in our infringement case that their
8 label instructs practicing these claims. We heard no response
9 from them in their case, no expert testimony, no other
10 testimony indicating otherwise. The evidence is undisputed
11 that their label instructs use of the claim.

12 Now, if they have some argument that not everyone
13 practices the claim, that's not a defense to infringement under
14 35 U.S.C. 271(e), which is the section that we're addressing
15 here in this case. The *AstraZeneca* case clearly stands for
16 that proposition. We cited that in our pretrial papers.

17 It doesn't matter whether everyone practices the
18 claim. What matters is whether anyone practices the claim.
19 And the testimony was clear that some doctors practice the
20 claim. If that were not right, we would have heard an expert
21 for Mylan come in here and tell you that, but they withdrew
22 their noninfringement expert.

23 And so they have no contrary interpretation of the
24 evidence because the evidence is undisputed that some doctors
25 will practice this claim. They haven't disputed that their

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 label sets forth the claim. Under the *Warner-Lambert* case and
2 its progeny, that reflects Mylan's intent.

3 You can't say I didn't mean it, I don't really care
4 if people do it, I don't want to do it. That's not what
5 happens under Section 271(e). Your label reflects your intent.
6 The evidence is undisputed that their label hits every
7 limitation of the claim and instructs doctors to practice the
8 claim. That's sufficient for intent. That's the beginning and
9 the end of that inquiry.

10 With respect to invalidity on the method of treatment
11 claim, they have not advanced any argument that there are five
12 loading doses in the prior art for the DME and diabetic
13 retinopathy. It's just not there. They try to massage every
14 single reference they can to make three five or to may pro re
15 nata, prn, dosing somehow turn into five.

16 You heard yesterday from the witness stand from
17 Dr. Stewart that it's just not there. That's not what it says,
18 and they can't change what the prior art says. And based on
19 the record that they have created, there is no case of
20 obviousness because, again, every limitation in the claim as a
21 whole has to be obvious.

22 Finally, as to the Claim 6 of the '572 patent, you've
23 heard a lot of testimony about where the prior art was. It was
24 unclear what treatment regimens would go forward. The art was
25 trending away from the dosing regimen that is in the claim

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 here. Genentech had failed with their efforts to do extended
2 fixed dosing. People were moving toward pro re nata dosing.

3 Again, I don't think there are all that many factual
4 disputes on this point, and under the facts in the record,
5 there is no obviousness. It was not moving in the direction
6 where the claims went. And we did that, not anyone else.

7 With respect to their argument on the isotonic
8 limitation, Your Honor, they have not established how far
9 outside of the range of isotonic you would want to go or not
10 want to go. They had one witness testifying about this,
11 Dr. Albini, who said you wouldn't want to use something too
12 isotonic, over 800, because it could create some problems and
13 he provided a reference, but he declined to say how far outside
14 of that range of isotonic -- and we've seen what that is in the
15 record -- you would be willing to go or not willing to go.

16 And so while they have made some case crediting all
17 their evidence, as one does at the Rule 52 stage, that you
18 wouldn't want to venture too far, all the way over 800, they
19 have not made any case that you can't venture at all outside of
20 the isotonic range to practice the claims. So I think their
21 argument there is deficient as well.

22 So with that, obviously, open to any questions, but
23 we believe that we should have judgment at this stage on both
24 patents.

25 THE COURT: Understood. Thank you, Mr. Berl,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Counsel.

2 Ms. Mazzochi, my apologies. I had some reading
3 materials we discussed early this morning. This is my first
4 cup of coffee; so I somehow combined your name with
5 Mr. Rakoczy, name into one. I assume I'm not the first person
6 to do that, but with my apologies, ma'am, go right ahead.

7 MS. MAZZOCHI: No worries, Your Honor. I am used to
8 it. I got over that in about third grade, people
9 mispronouncing both my first and last names. So I'm good. As
10 long as you're not shooing me out in the courtroom, I'm happy.

11 All right. Your Honor, under 52(c), first of all,
12 I'll go in reverse order.

13 The plaintiffs have suggested -- as we stated in our
14 Rule 52(c) motion, we do not believe the plaintiffs have met
15 their burden, and similarly the evidence that we have set forth
16 in connection with our case in chief actually undermines
17 plaintiff's claims that it would be improper on the
18 infringement side to infer an intent to induce, not only
19 because of the miniscule number of individuals that they, in
20 theory, tried to come up with who might be practicing the
21 claims. They don't dispute that you have to first have a
22 direct infringer before you can have an active indirect
23 infringement. They simply don't have the proof on that.

24 Furthermore, the Federal Circuit case law is also
25 clear that, even if you want to assume a label indication is an

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 infringing one, if you have noninfringing label uses -- and
2 that discretion is left up to the clinical judgment of the
3 prescribing physician, which Dr. Csaky admitted it would be --
4 then there is no inference of an intent to deceive.

5 Furthermore, with regard to their issues with regard
6 to invalidity, they don't dispute that we really met our burden
7 because, again, they keep focusing on what was expressly stated
8 in a reference as opposed to what was inherently disclosed in a
9 reference. They have -- our experts were firm on that issue
10 that there was inherency through Dixon and other references.
11 Even their attempt to try to get Dr. Stewart to agree with them
12 backfired because he admitted that, as a person who is a
13 prescribing physician, if he was going to apply a prn dosing
14 regimen, he could easily envision how you could get to five
15 loading doses before you go to eight-week dosing. So that
16 pretty much backfired on them.

17 When it comes to obviousness, again, I'm not quite
18 sure exactly what Mr. Berl is really trying to argue here with
19 regard to the term "isotonic." If someone would have been
20 motivated to make the formulation isotonic, and the undisputed
21 evidence is that they would be, to say, "Well, I can come up
22 with some theory as to why something might not be isotonic"
23 does not negate the motivation of a person of ordinary skill in
24 the art to actually make the formulation obvious.

25 Likewise, when it comes to these particular dosing

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 regimens, the motivation in the art was very clear that there
2 was going to be -- that the doctors were already using
3 extension methods, including after a monthly loading dose
4 period. So the fact that Regeneron thinks that maybe they
5 optimized them at five, routine optimization is not something
6 that can be grounds for patentability.

7 With regard to indefiniteness and some of the other
8 Section 112 issues that Dr. Stewart identified, as Dr. Stewart
9 mentioned, Dr. Csaky has nothing in his expert report
10 suggesting that the particular disease indications he
11 identified will not work. So that nixes Claim 6.

12 And when it comes to the specification, again, the
13 fact that the number 4 or the number 5 might appear somewhere
14 in a specification does not satisfy the Federal Circuit's blaze
15 marks test.

16 So we have met our burden to show indefiniteness. We
17 have -- I'm sorry -- nonenablement, written description. We
18 put forth the evidence of indefiniteness. That wasn't even
19 addressed in terms of their inconsistent metrics that Regeneron
20 is trying to propose for the term "approximately." So we have
21 certainly met our burden on each of the elements with regard to
22 the dosing patents and all the defenses that we have raised.

23 With regard to the formulation, the '865 patent
24 claim, I'm sure Mr. Salmen will kick me off the podium if I say
25 anything wrong, and we'll probably want to add to it, but let

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 me just try to --

2 THE COURT: Probably in the form of a sticky note,
3 but go ahead.

4 MS. MAZZOCHI: We love those sticky notes, especially
5 if they are not going to keep a protein from falling out of
6 solution.

7 But, you know, on this question of aggregation,
8 again, what I think that Regeneron is really trying to do is
9 they are trying to renegotiate, reopen, and modify the Court's
10 claim construction. The claim construction was clear because
11 the scientific literature is clear that a cosolvent is
12 something that will in fact increase the amount of substance
13 that you have in solution.

14 And for all of the drama that's been going on back
15 here, nobody's disputing what the phenomenon is. It's just
16 that Dr. Trout is trying to say that, when you're preventing
17 aggregation, that's somehow the flip side of improving
18 solubility. It simply is not.

19 You know, Mr. Berl keeps saying you put more in
20 there. You are not putting more in there in the context of our
21 formulation. It starts in solution. It stays in solution.
22 And the fact that you've said, well, maybe you've put some
23 bumper guards up to make sure that you don't come out of
24 solution, that is not increasing the overall solubility of the
25 substance.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 We're not starting at 30 mg/mL putting a material in
2 there and now it's getting us to 40 mg/mL. That's not --
3 what's what you actually use a cosolvent for. We're not
4 starting out with a lyophilized formulation that maybe was at
5 half the concentration stored that way for stability purposes.
6 Now we're going to add a cosolvent to it as we reconstitute it
7 so that we can expand the nature of the formulation. That's
8 not what's happening here.

9 All that's happening is we started at 40 mg/mL. We
10 stay at that concentration. And we don't need to have the
11 polysorbate in there to increase the concentration because
12 we're not increasing the concentration. We're not using it to
13 stuff more aflibercept into the existing formulation.

14 So, furthermore, when it comes to some of the
15 questions with regard to anticipation, again, I'm going to take
16 issue with Mr. Berl's suggestion that, when the prior art
17 disclosed 10 to 50, that that somehow is not good enough to
18 anticipate a milligram range of 40.

19 And the arguments that they're trying to make here
20 again, they either have an obvious and anticipation problem or
21 they have a Section 112 enablement problem and they also are
22 not going to be able to claim the benefit back to their earlier
23 applications. Because here again -- when the Federal Circuit
24 has identified situations where you have a range and you are
25 going to now say I've found something within the range I'm

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 going to call patentable, you also have the burden to come
2 forward and show that it's called a result-effective variable,
3 that there's something unique or special about this particular
4 point in the range that's not shared by other formulations that
5 are within the same scope of the range.

6 There is no evidence in the record that there's
7 something magical here about 40 mg/mL formulations that's
8 unique, distinct, and different from the 10- to 50-milligram
9 ones. And if it is, then their specification certainly hasn't
10 enabled the person of ordinary skill in the art how to identify
11 it, find it, or get there. And that's part of what our
12 Section 112 arguments are all about.

13 That's likewise the same argument that condemns their
14 ability to claim backwards in their priority applications. If
15 they're going to start to say that our particular
16 combination -- I call it their particular combination of the
17 jigsaw puzzle that's sitting in the claims.

18 If they want to say there's really something special
19 about each particular range that we've pinpointed as against
20 the prior art background of this being part of the normal
21 recipe that people were using -- a surfactant, a solubilizer, a
22 buffer -- then their specification doesn't enable it. And
23 that's why, again, they don't have any reason to say that these
24 are unique or distinct. And if they are, then it fails under
25 Section 112.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 And that's why, Your Honor, we do keep getting back
2 to -- you know, again, Mr. Berl was saying, oh, well, look, we
3 can find some instances where somebody will routinely optimize
4 a formulation. Yeah, if you actually have an existing
5 formulation, there are routine steps that somebody can go
6 through to try to optimize it.

7 The problem is that these claims are not limited to
8 just a narrow scope or a narrow range. These claims in the
9 '865 patent are directed to an incredibly broad range. And
10 they have not actually taught the person of ordinary skill in
11 the art how to do that.

12 That's why -- when you start going through the undue
13 experimentation factors, that's why they exist to determine
14 is -- in the ultimate legal question for you, is it undue? Is
15 the amount of burden that the person of ordinary skill in the
16 art has to go through? Do we have broad claims? We sure do.

17 Are they saying the art is unpredictable when it
18 comes to the obviousness analysis? They sure are.

19 Are they saying things like, oh, a person of ordinary
20 skill in the art wouldn't be able to do these things because
21 they were teaching away with motivations against it? Yes.

22 So even when you have, then, the '865 patent in hand
23 and you ask the person of ordinary skill in the art would you
24 be able to make the full scope of what is claimed? the answer
25 then becomes no, not without a significant massive amount of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 experimentation, where you are now back in trial-and-error
2 land.

3 So yes, could the person of ordinary skill in the art
4 take, for example, the existing census formulations that were
5 designed for intravitreal purposes and actually put them
6 forward -- you know, use them -- put aflibercept into them, for
7 example, or take the Fraser formulation that's existing and
8 optimize that? Of course they could.

9 But if you want to then say but what about -- but
10 Regeneron didn't limit themselves to just the narrow claim.
11 They went broad. And because they went broad, that's what the
12 Amgen case is all about. The minute you decide you're going to
13 go with a very broad claim, you better have the specification
14 disclosure to support it. And here, they simply don't.

15 So, Your Honor, I know that you're going -- I'm
16 assuming you're going to take all these under advisement and
17 these will be the subject of posttrial briefing; but, again,
18 that's essentially an outline of where things are here.

19 THE COURT: I'll ask you the same question counsel
20 asked Mr. Berl.

21 Why should polysorbate care what name we ascribe to
22 it?

23 MS. MAZZOCHI: I think that what we care about is the
24 Court's claim construction. The Court --

25 THE COURT: That's a living and breathing

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 construction, correct?

2 MS. MAZZOCHI: The Court's claim construction
3 contemplates a behavior profile.

4 THE COURT: Right. But that can change through
5 completion of trial, correct?

6 MS. MAZZOCHI: And that's exactly the point, is that
7 there are instances where polysorbate can behave as a
8 cosolvent, when it is driving more aflibercept versus your
9 starting point into solution.

10 That's not -- that is not what is happening here.
11 So -- and that's where we fundamentally just object to what
12 Dr. Trout is trying to do. He is trying to say that preventing
13 a protein from denaturing or preventing an existing amount of
14 protein from crashing out of solution, that that is somehow
15 equivalent to increasing the amount in solution. They're
16 fundamentally different things.

17 And I think that what you see, then, at least in
18 Mylan's BLA, is when we're using, for example, the terminology
19 that we do -- and I don't want to get -- I don't remember which
20 part is public or not.

21 But when we are talking about our -- things within
22 our BLA, we are making representations to the FDA this is the
23 behavioral consequence of what's happening. This is how it is
24 working. This is how it's functioning. This is how it's
25 behaving.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 So our terminology that we have presented to the FDA
2 is describing how it's behaving in solution. And what we never
3 said is we are using this to make sure we can fit enough
4 aflibercept in the formulation in order to meet our
5 specification goals. If we did, it would be called a
6 cosolvent; since we're not, that's why it's not there.

7 So I agree that the Court should be looking at the
8 behavior of what's going on, but what they're trying to do is
9 refine the term "cosolvent" to give it a new scientifically
10 inaccurate reading. They're trying to basically graft the
11 function and behavior of a stabilizer, of a surfactant, into
12 the definition of cosolvent through semantic games. And we
13 just fundamentally disagree that that's appropriate to happen
14 here.

15 So I don't know if I've -- I don't know if I've
16 answered your question. Maybe I haven't answered your
17 question. But that to me is fundamentally where we're coming
18 from here.

19 THE COURT: It strikes me at this juncture -- I mean,
20 polysorbate 20, Tween 20, whatever we want to call it in terms
21 of what the substance is, is on the list of ingredients, right?

22 MS. MAZZOCHI: Sure.

23 THE COURT: There's no dispute about that. What
24 strikes me is the more operative dispute here is does it matter
25 whether or not the claims of the patent ascribe the right

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 moniker to it as to what its function is? Is that as
2 dispositive as I intuit at this point?

3 MS. MAZZOCHI: Yeah. And I think that it is
4 important because when the claim uses the term "cosolvent" --
5 and remember, Your Honor, they have claims that are specific to
6 polysorbate. That's Claim 51. So they had the ability to
7 say -- and they do have claims that say, "I hereby claim a
8 formulation with polysorbate in it, and we don't care about its
9 function. We don't care about its role."

10 They have those claims. Those aren't asserted here.

11 They've tried to use broader claims where they did
12 impart a functional concept, buffer, cosolvent, stabilizing
13 agent. They're trying to take those broad functionally defined
14 terms and say we're now going to cover this ingredient.

15 By the way, Your Honor, they also clearly thought
16 that the term "cosolvent" was different from a stabilizer.
17 They used both of those terms in Claim 1. So for Regeneron to
18 now turn around and say, oh, well, now I'm going to treat them
19 as if they are synonymous terms violates a whole host of claim
20 construction rules.

21 So here again, I understand -- and this is where I
22 think, Your Honor, there has been a lot that the parties have
23 agreed on. But what we fundamentally don't -- I mean, when it
24 comes to --

25 THE COURT: I may not need my second cup of coffee

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 after this, Counsel, all recently filed pleadings to the
2 contrary. But go ahead. We might just hear what all we've
3 agreed upon.

4 MS. MAZZOCHI: In the sense of the parties -- the
5 parties are not disputing what's in the formulation. They're
6 not disputing amounts in the formulation. And Regeneron, for
7 example, is not disputing that we have histidine. Histidine is
8 also helping to -- it performs a role within the formulation.

9 But if you start then getting away from, well, I'm
10 going to let them say that cosolvent can just mean anything
11 that helps or anything that prevents aggregation or anything
12 that helps prevent denaturation, that's fundamentally rewriting
13 the claims.

14 So they chose to put terms in their claims that had
15 functional aspects to them -- buffer, stabilizer, cosolvent.
16 Our evidence and everything that we've submitted to the FDA, we
17 submit, confirms we are not using that function with that
18 ingredient. We're not using polysorbate to achieve the
19 functional role of a cosolvent.

20 What is that functional role? It has to be
21 increasing, not keeping it in, not -- if you've got the same
22 number of players on the team or on the roster and you say I
23 want to increase the roster, that means you're putting more on.

24 But, by contrast, all we're saying is we've got
25 nonplayers on the field and we're just trying to make sure none

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 of them has to run off. That's not putting more people on the
2 roster; that's just trying to keep everything status quo.

3 What they're trying to say is that, well, if you're
4 trying to maintain the status quo, then somehow you're
5 increasing and you're changing something. It's just -- it's
6 not.

7 So that's why, you know, when it comes to what's
8 going on here, it is very important what they actually put in
9 their claim. And we can't start erasing those claim
10 limitations. We just can't.

11 And frankly, Your Honor, if they had wanted to make a
12 doctrine of equivalence argument, which it seems like they
13 might be trying to now make, they had every opportunity to do
14 that months ago. But then they also would have had to comply
15 with the Federal Circuit standards on equivalent function,
16 equivalent way, equivalent result, showing that they didn't
17 disclose but not claim things, which are legal restrictions.
18 They wouldn't have been able to meet those standards, which is
19 why we don't have a doctrine of equivalence analysis here.

20 So they offered literal infringement. They have a
21 claim construction. The claim construction requires that a
22 cosolvent has to actually help dissolve, get more things into
23 solution. And they haven't demonstrated that our ingredients
24 are going to do that.

25 Hopefully, that answers your question.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 THE COURT: Understood.

2 MS. MAZZOCHI: Thank you.

3 THE COURT: Given the context of a bench trial
4 proceeding and the myriad of questions the Court has to sift
5 through, the Court's going to, under 52(c), decline to render
6 judgment at this point but proceed with hearing evidence on
7 that front.

8 Who will Regeneron's first rebuttal witness be?

9 MR. BERL: Your Honor, the first witness will be
10 Karen Chu.

11 THE COURT: All right. We're going to take ten
12 minutes at this point. I'll give Regeneron an opportunity to
13 respond to the motion concerning Ms. Chu, and we'll go from
14 there. We'll be at ease for ten minutes. Thank you.

15 (A recess was taken from 10:17 a.m. to
16 10:36 a.m.)

17 THE COURT: Regeneron's response to Motion 546.

18 MR. GREGORY: Good morning again, Your Honor.

19 THE COURT: Good morning.

20 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, obviously, we have not had
21 a chance to fully brief this issue in response to the motion
22 that we received this morning at -- I believe it was around
23 7:00 a.m.

24 THE COURT: 6:49.

25 MR. GREGORY: I was close.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Respectfully, Your Honor, I think that we have a road
2 map for dealing with exactly this situation. We've -- we're
3 having this trial already. It's the same road map that we used
4 with Dr. Yancopoulos and Dr. Furfine. And that is,
5 respectfully, Your Honor, this is a bench trial. And I think
6 Ms. Chu should be able to take the stand, provide her
7 testimony.

8 If defense counsel feels that, in fact, we verge into
9 issues or material or documents that are inappropriate somehow
10 to use with Ms. Chu or to address through Ms. Chu, they could
11 raise that in the posttrial briefing or in the course of her
12 testimony.

13 I think that is, frankly, the beginning and end of
14 the issue. I'm happy to discuss with particularity some of the
15 arguments that I can discern from this brief that I've had a
16 little bit of time to digest now.

17 The overriding argument seems to be that Ms. Chu's
18 testimony -- the subject matter of her testimony is some sort
19 of surprise. I'm not sure how that can be the case. So the
20 facts are as follows:

21 Ms. Chu has been on our initial disclosures -- our
22 Rule 26 disclosures since --

23 THE COURT: Yes. I don't think there's any dispute
24 about that. She was deposed.

25 MR. GREGORY: And she was deposed for over seven

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 hours, a full day. You heard an hour of her testimony
2 yesterday.

3 THE COURT: I have not heard what the weather was in
4 the city of her deposition.

5 Sorry. I couldn't resist. Go ahead.

6 MR. GREGORY: So -- but to be clear, in those initial
7 disclosures starting back in September, in an interrogatory
8 response filed in January, in her deposition, in all these
9 places, Mylan-Biocon was informed what the subject matter of
10 her testimony would be. That's the conception, reduction to
11 practice of the inventions found in the '601 and the '572
12 patents as well as the clinical properties of aflibercept.
13 That's been consistent in every one of these written
14 communications.

15 Ms. Chu has been on both parties' witness lists since
16 the first witness lists were exchanged. I candidly don't know
17 how much more I can explain about what Ms. Chu's going to
18 testify to without actually putting on her testimony and
19 walking through it with Your Honor and with defense counsel
20 here.

21 THE COURT: Understood.

22 Counsel, she's been disclosed as a witness. You've
23 had the opportunity to depose her. I'll be candid with you.
24 I'm at a loss.

25 MS. MAZZOCHI: Sure. Your Honor, we were able to

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 depose her as a 30(b)(6) witness and a 30(b)(1). But at the
2 outset of her deposition, I put the initial disclosures in
3 front of her and said okay, what are you going to testify to at
4 trial?

5 THE COURT: Did you ask her what knowledge she had
6 about it?

7 MS. MAZZOCHI: Yeah. She didn't even --

8 THE COURT: The words matter. It's a completely
9 different question. I've read the exchange not only in the
10 last volley we had over Ms. Chu's testimony but also the motion
11 that was filed this morning.

12 The words matter. The objection to what are you
13 going to testify to at trial is, I think, a valid one. But
14 there's different questions that could have been asked, I
15 guess, is my point.

16 Let me get to this point as well. Ms. Chu testified
17 under oath. If she gets up here and all of a sudden has
18 learned a whole lot of new things that she didn't know at the
19 time, that sounds like a very compelling and rich
20 cross-examination that will weigh heavily in this Court's
21 assessment of her credibility.

22 But I'm not inclined -- I'll say I'm going to deny
23 the motion at this juncture. I don't think, as a matter of
24 law, it is proper to preclude her testimony consistent with the
25 Court's prior rulings. She was disclosed. She was deposed.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 If she's changed her story or augmented her knowledge that she
2 did not have at the time, counsel is certainly welcome and no
3 doubt capable to expose that direct cross. So that motion will
4 be denied.

5 We'll take up the other motion with respect to
6 Drs. Ryder and Russell when we get to them if Regeneron intends
7 to call them.

8 Mylan may call its next witness -- I'm sorry.

9 Regeneron may call its next witness.

10 MR. GREGORY: Thank you, Your Honor.

11 Regeneron calls Ms. Karen Chu.

12 THE COURT: Counsel, before you begin, just a
13 warning, if I get a message that indicates I need to walk out
14 of here in 18 minutes because of traffic to retrieve a kid,
15 I'll let everybody know, but then we may take an early lunch
16 break today. Just FYI.

17 With apologies to you, Ms. Chu.

18 MR. GREGORY: Understand, Your Honor. I have a
19 4-year-old myself and I know how it goes.

20 THE COURT: Understood. I-79 has been a joy the last
21 few weeks.

22 With that, Counsel, you may proceed.

23 MR. GREGORY: Thank you.

24 **KAREN CHU, PLAINTIFF'S WITNESS, SWORN**

25 DIRECT EXAMINATION

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 BY MR. GREGORY:

2 Q. Ms. Chu, could you please introduce yourself to the
3 Court.

4 A. Yes. Good morning. My name is Karen Chu.

5 Q. Where do you currently work, Ms. Chu?

6 A. I currently work at Regeneron Pharmaceuticals in
7 Tarrytown, New York.

8 Q. And I want to come back and talk about how you got
9 there and your role. But just first, what is your job title at
10 Regeneron?

11 A. My current title is executive director of clinical
12 strategy and execution for ophthalmology.

13 Q. And what are your current responsibilities generally
14 in that role?

15 A. My responsibilities are that I oversee all of
16 ophthalmology clinical development alongside our therapeutic
17 area head. And that includes interacting with our research and
18 preclinical groups for molecules coming into the clinic as well
19 as the design, strategy, and execution of clinical trials.

20 Q. You mentioned just now clinical trials and clinical
21 development. Just so we're clear on what we're talking about,
22 what are clinical trials?

23 A. So clinical trials are the studies done in humans to
24 support bringing a therapeutic product to potential
25 commercialization.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 Q. So I want to back up now and talk a little bit about
2 how you got to where you are today. So can you give us a
3 little bit of background on your education.

4 A. Sure.

5 So I have a bachelor's of science in biology from Cal
6 Poly San Luis Obispo. And then I have a master's of science in
7 human nutrition from Columbia University.

8 Q. How did you come to work at Regeneron?

9 A. So at the end -- as part of my master's program, I
10 was required to complete thesis research. And I did that
11 research at St. Luke's Roosevelt Hospital in New York City and
12 was exposed to clinical research and clinical trials there.
13 They had an obesity clinical research unit.

14 And so I knew, coming out of my graduate program,
15 that I was interested in clinical research. I actually moved
16 back to California and was subsequently hired at Sequus
17 Pharmaceuticals as a clinical trial assistant.

18 Q. And where did you go from Sequus?

19 A. So from Sequus I subsequently worked for Purdue
20 Pharma as a regulatory compliance or clinical quality assurance
21 associate.

22 Q. And what was your next stop?

23 A. After that I went to a CRO, or a contract research
24 organization, called Barton & Polansky. And there I was a
25 clinical project manager helping to oversee the conduct of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 Phase IIIIB clinical trials in HIV.

2 Q. So still doing clinical trial work at that point?

3 A. Absolutely.

4 Q. And from there what was the next stop in your career
5 path?

6 A. So after Barton & Polansky I was hired by GenVec.
7 They were a small gene therapy company based in Gaithersburg,
8 Maryland. And they did a lot of work in New York City with
9 their scientific founder at Cornell.

10 Q. What kind of diseases or disorders was GenVec looking
11 to treat?

12 A. So we had gene therapy products for both oncology
13 indications as well as a product that we were testing in
14 ophthalmology indications, specifically AMD at the time.

15 Q. And why did you ultimately leave GenVec?

16 A. So I was at GenVec for over four years. And towards
17 the end of my time there, there were some changes in the gene
18 therapy field that made it more difficult for the company to
19 stay funded. And we -- the company had to make some hard
20 decisions and laid off a number of people.

21 At that time I was not laid off, but it certainly
22 didn't portend for a positive future for the company. So I
23 started looking around for other opportunities at that time.

24 Q. Is that how you ultimately arrived at Regeneron?

25 A. Exactly. So I knew about Regeneron from mostly the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 oncology field, because at that time anti-VEGFs were presenting
2 brand-new data and were very much seen as a revolutionary
3 treatment. And so I knew that Regeneron had an anti-VEGF
4 product that they were developing as well as the fact that they
5 happened to be in New York, which was convenient.

6 Q. And just so we can put this kind of in time, what
7 year was it when you started with Regeneron?

8 A. I started with Regeneron in 2003.

9 Q. And what was your title at that point?

10 A. I was hired as a clinical trial manager.

11 Q. And what was your role at that point in 2003 when you
12 first started?

13 A. So primarily I was brought in to help implement and
14 execute the clinical trials. At that time we had mostly early
15 phase clinical trials. And having had experience in both
16 oncology and ophthalmology, I was a very good fit for the team
17 at the time. But my role quickly pivoted to being very much
18 focused on ophthalmology.

19 Q. And can you describe for the Court kind of how your
20 responsibilities at Regeneron have changed over the last two
21 decades in your time with the company.

22 A. Sure. So I've certainly -- my entire career at
23 Regeneron has been in ophthalmology. And, certainly, I have
24 been part of the Eylea development program really from the time
25 that it came from our preclinical group and entered the clinic.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 When I started at Regeneron, Regeneron was a small
2 company. We were only about 500 employees total. And in our
3 clinical and regulatory group, I think we were about 30 people
4 total. So everybody wore a lot of different hats. And I had
5 the great opportunity to be involved, really, from the very
6 beginning in discussions around development strategy as well as
7 had input into study designs, et cetera.

8 Q. Ms. Chu, do you have a medical degree or formal
9 medical training?

10 A. I do not.

11 Q. How is it that you're able to contribute to the
12 clinical research and development work at Regeneron without
13 that educational background?

14 A. Sure. So I have over 25 years of direct experience
15 in clinical development in various therapeutic areas but over
16 20 years of experience in ophthalmology and specifically in
17 retina clinical development.

18 Q. So I'd first like to discuss just a little bit
19 Regeneron's clinical development efforts for aflibercept for
20 the treatment of wet age-related macular degeneration. Is that
21 okay?

22 A. Sure.

23 Q. Just as some background to begin, can you remind me
24 what stage clinical trials did Regeneron ultimately perform of
25 aflibercept in wet AMD?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 A. So we performed Phase I, Phase II, and Phase III
2 clinical trials in wet AMD.

3 Q. And what do Regeneron's Phase I clinical trials
4 entail in ophthalmology?

5 A. Yeah. So typically -- so with ophthalmology clinical
6 trials, our Phase I trials are relatively small. These are
7 considered first in human trials; so the primary purpose is to
8 get initial safety information.

9 So typically these trials would be less than 50
10 patients total, and we would be looking, as I said, to get
11 initial safety but also to do dose ranging and get additional
12 information around the kinetics of the drug and systemic
13 exposure to the drug.

14 Q. And what do Regeneron's Phase II ophthalmology trials
15 typically involve?

16 A. So Phase II trials are what we call proof-of-concept
17 trials. So these are the first trials where we're really
18 looking to get a confirmation of efficacy or biological effect.
19 And we're -- of course, we're always looking for additional
20 safety information. And typically Phase II trials tend to be a
21 bit larger, somewhere between, I would say, 100 to about 300
22 patients at the most.

23 Q. And how about Regeneron's Phase III ophthalmology
24 trials? What do those typically look like?

25 A. So Phase III trials are the pivotal trials that we

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 plan to, if successful, hopefully submit to health authorities
2 to support a marketing application. And so these are trials
3 that are what we call powered for a statistical difference
4 between treatment groups. And they can typically be very
5 large, so on the order of hundreds to thousands of patients.

6 Q. Could you give us a sense of how long it typically
7 takes Regeneron to plan and execute its Phase III ophthalmology
8 trials?

9 A. So the planning for even the late phases of
10 development really begins very, very early in product
11 development. So even before we would bring a product into the
12 clinic, we would be looking at -- we would be laying out what
13 we think the clinical development plan would look like, and
14 that would include kind of a high-level review of Phase I,
15 Phase II, and Phase III clinical trials.

16 Obviously, as we conduct the clinical trials and
17 receive more information during development, we refine our
18 thoughts and our strategies around how we will move forward.
19 And so from the time that we would have that Phase II or
20 proof-of-concept data to the initiation of a Phase III
21 protocol, it would take somewhere between 18 months to a year.

22 Q. And how expensive is it for Regeneron to run a
23 Phase III ophthalmology clinical trial?

24 A. So our -- in my experience, our clinical trials
25 typically cost about 150,000 to \$200,000 per patient. So when

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 you're talking about a trial on the order of, you know, 600 to
2 1200 patients, that can easily run in the hundreds of millions
3 of dollars.

4 Q. In your experience, does Regeneron typically disclose
5 publicly the details of its clinical trials or maintain those
6 details confidentially?

7 A. We're always very careful about ensuring that we have
8 confidentiality agreements in place, even when we're having
9 discussions with external experts about aspects of planning or
10 early, you know, decisions around indications to potentially
11 move into, et cetera.

12 And during the clinical trials all of the
13 investigators and their staff operate under the clinical trial
14 agreements, which include a confidentiality clause.

15 Q. Now, are patients in Regeneron's clinical trials
16 subject to confidentiality agreements?

17 A. No, they are not.

18 Q. Have you ever heard of the term "investigator
19 brochure"?

20 A. Yes, I'm aware of that.

21 Q. Could you tell us what that is in your experience.

22 A. Sure. So the investigator brochure is a document
23 that summarizes all of the available data for that
24 investigational product. So it would detail important
25 information for an investigator to know, like the toxicology

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 results, any safety information we have received from ongoing
2 or if completed clinical trials, as well as any information
3 from the class itself or what we know about the mechanism of
4 the drug.

5 Q. And do patients or subjects in Regeneron's clinical
6 trials get access to the investigator brochure?

7 A. No, they do not.

8 Q. Do patients in Regeneron's clinical trials know what
9 dosing regimen or arm of the trial they're in?

10 A. No. So, obviously, informed consent is a major
11 focus, and every patient who enters a clinical trial is
12 provided adequate time to ask questions and review the informed
13 consent form before agreeing to enter the trial. And we always
14 strive to put sufficient information into the informed consent
15 form so the patient understands the procedures and the design
16 of the study.

17 Typically, especially in Phase III trials, the
18 patients as well as the staff are masked to treatment
19 assignment or blinded to treatment assignment. So the patient
20 typically would not know what treatment assignment they were
21 receiving.

22 Q. Do patients in Regeneron's clinical trials know if
23 they're receiving -- in trials where a sham injection is
24 employed, do patients in those trials know if they're receiving
25 an actual injection as opposed to a sham injection?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 A. No, they do not. And the purpose of the sham
2 procedure is really to mimic as closely as possible without
3 actually piercing the globe, the intravitreal injection
4 procedure. So they're prepped in the same way and the needle
5 of the syringe -- or sorry -- the hub of the syringe is pressed
6 against the globe so the sensation is similar.

7 THE COURT: Counsel, if I could interrupt, and,
8 Ms. Chu, if this is outside your scope. So we're not talking
9 about a placebo. We're talking about a fake injection that
10 doesn't actually puncture the eyeball.

11 THE WITNESS: That's right.

12 THE COURT: Okay. All right.

13 THE WITNESS: If it helps you, I know --

14 THE COURT: None of this helps me. I'm still having
15 all manner of eyeball and contact fake discomfort. But go
16 ahead, ma'am. Sorry.

17 THE WITNESS: Well, I hope this will help you.

18 THE COURT: Thank you.

19 THE WITNESS: The way that these physicians complete
20 the intravitreal injection, the patient -- they certainly don't
21 come at the patient from right in front of their face with a
22 needle. So you -- typically, a patient is reclined in a chair,
23 and they prepare the injection behind the patient and they come
24 at them from behind so the patient really never has a chance to
25 see the syringe or the needle.

 Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 THE COURT: Okay. Don't think that helped, ma'am,
2 but thank you.

3 Counsel, go ahead.

4 MR. GREGORY: I have the exact same question, Your
5 Honor.

6 THE COURT: The sneak attack sham injection.
7 Understood. Go ahead, Counsel.

8 BY MR. GREGORY:

9 Q. Ms. Chu, do patients in Regeneron's clinical trials
10 typically know the technical details of the product they're
11 being administered?

12 A. No. So the investigators brochure, obviously,
13 contains a high-level description of the product, but as we've
14 discussed, that's typically not provided to the patient.

15 Q. Do patients in Regeneron's clinical trials know the
16 formulation of the drug product they're being administered?

17 MS. MAZZOCHI: Objection, Your Honor. Calls for
18 speculation as to what the patients know.

19 THE COURT: Sustained.

20 BY MR. GREGORY:

21 Q. Does Regeneron provide information to the patients in
22 its clinical trials about the formulation of the drug product
23 they're being administered?

24 A. No, we do not.

25 Q. In the informed consent that is given to the patients

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 as part of their participation in the clinical trials, it does
2 not contain that information, correct?

3 A. It does not.

4 Q. Do you recall a time frame in or around 2007 when
5 Regeneron was engaged in planning for its prospective at that
6 point Phase III wet AMD trials?

7 A. Yes. We actually began our development in DME
8 back -- all the way back beginning in 2004.

9 Q. What role did senior management play in those
10 development discussions around the Phase III trials?

11 A. Yeah. So as I've already mentioned, Regeneron was
12 and in many ways is still a small company, and so our senior
13 management has always been heavily involved in discussions
14 around the clinical development planning and strategy as well
15 as decisions around study design.

16 Q. Just for clarity, was it the -- what Phase III
17 planning began in 2004? Was it wet AMD? Was it DME? What
18 indications in that planning? What began then?

19 A. I mean, obviously, in 2004 we were already thinking
20 about development in DME, but in 2004 we were really focused on
21 what we felt was the initial indication or the priority
22 indication, which was neovascular AMD.

23 Q. What was Dr. Yancopoulos's typical role in those
24 discussions around Phase III wet AMD planning?

25 A. So Dr. Yancopoulos was heavily involved and certainly

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 was part of many, many discussions related to the clinical
2 study designs and strategy, and ultimately he was the final
3 decision maker regarding aspects of the study design and
4 clinical development program.

5 Q. I'd like you to take a look at a document for me,
6 Ms. Chu. And you should have a binder in front of you, and
7 we're also going to put it up on the screen. But I'd like you
8 to take a look at PTX 0188.

9 Let me know when you have that in front of you.

10 A. Yes, I see that.

11 Q. And do you recognize this document?

12 A. Yes. This is an email from March 28, 2007, regarding
13 decisions that need to be made to facilitate the beginning of
14 the first AMD pivotal study.

15 Q. And I'd like you to take a look at item number --
16 just for clarity, you are a recipient of this email, right?

17 A. Yes, I am on this email as a recipient.

18 Q. It's dated March 28, 2007?

19 A. That's correct.

20 Q. And I'd like you to take a look at Item Number 2 in
21 the body of the email.

22 Can you please explain to the Court what was under
23 consideration at this time.

24 A. Yeah. So in this email we were planning on a
25 four-arm study with approximately 1,200 patients with the doses

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 of .5 milligrams, 2 milligrams, and potentially 4 milligrams
2 with different intervals being considered, q4, q8, and q12.

3 Q. There hadn't been a decision yet on the exact dosing
4 interval?

5 A. At this time we had not made a final decision.

6 Q. Could you please take a look at Item Letter G at the
7 bottom of the email. Do you see that?

8 A. Yes, I see that.

9 Q. And so what is being discussed here?

10 A. So this was an action item for an internal meeting to
11 be set up; so that way we could make decisions -- have
12 discussions and make decisions about these elements that would
13 facilitate the finalization of the -- what we call the clinical
14 study concept document, which was the precursor to the clinical
15 protocol.

16 Q. And when was that meeting set for?

17 A. That was set for April 13th, 2007.

18 Q. Could you take a look back just briefly at that.

19 A. Oh, sorry.

20 Q. Just for clarity. The first line reads, "Kathleen to
21 set up a meeting next week, week of April 2nd."

22 A. Oh, sorry. The week of April 2nd.

23 Q. Let's look at DTX 227, which should also be in your
24 binder, and we'll also put it up on the screen.

25 Do you have DTX 227 before you, Ms. Chu?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 A. Yes, I see that.

2 Q. Do you recognize this document?

3 A. So this is an email from April 2nd, 2007.

4 Q. And you're a recipient of this email?

5 A. Yes, I am.

6 Q. And there's a -- the first line of the body of the
7 email reads, "Below is a summary of the decisions and actions
8 from the AMD Phase III program meeting," right?

9 A. Right.

10 Q. Could you please take a look at the decision bullet a
11 little bit further down the page and explain to us what
12 decision had come out of this meeting.

13 A. So we had made a decision about the study design and
14 the arms that would be included in the Phase III -- one of the
15 Phase III AMD studies, the 0605 study, which was the VIEW 1
16 study. And we were planning to include a Lucentis group as a
17 control, .5 milligrams aflibercept every four weeks,
18 2 milligrams every eight weeks after three initial monthly
19 doses, and a 2-milligram-every-four-week group.

20 Q. Ms. Chu, do you specifically recall how that decision
21 was made in this meeting?

22 A. I do not specifically recall.

23 Q. What was the typical practice at Regeneron for making
24 these type of clinical trial design decisions?

25 A. So typically the study team would be charged with

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 coming to our senior management with proposals and any
2 supporting data or other aspects of the program that would
3 support our proposals, and then we would have a discussion
4 about it with senior management. And then ultimately a final
5 decision would be made about how to move forward.

6 Q. What was Dr. Yancopoulos's typical role in those
7 decisions?

8 A. Dr. Yancopoulos was very involved in the discussions
9 as well as in any analysis of data. He very often would ask
10 for additional data or additional analyses to be presented, and
11 he was ultimately the final decision about the study -- the
12 groups that went into the study.

13 Q. I want to direct your attention to the final action
14 item, the bottom of the email. It says, "Discussed proposed
15 development plan with Darlene Jody," and then it's Bob, George,
16 Peter.

17 Who was Darlene Jody?

18 A. Darlene Jody was with Bayer at the time. She was a
19 senior executive responsible for the collaboration that we had
20 with them for Eylea.

21 Q. Did Bayer make the Phase III trial design decision
22 that we just saw in the upper part of this email?

23 A. No, they did not. The nature of our collaboration
24 with Bayer was such that Regeneron held the final scientific
25 decision-making for the program. So while we would certainly

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 have discussions with them and include members of their team
2 both at the team level as well as the senior management level
3 in our meetings and discussions about aspects of the clinical
4 development program, ultimately Regeneron had the final say.

5 Q. If Bayer had come up with a decision that we were
6 looking at in the upper part of the email, would the final
7 action item here have been discussed, proposed development
8 plan, with Bayer?

9 A. Well, they would probably have a set of minutes that
10 said they should discuss it with us.

11 Q. Okay. Let's take a look -- let's turn our attention,
12 actually, to the question of Regeneron's development of
13 aflibercept for the treatment of diabetic macular edema. Okay?

14 A. Sure.

15 Q. And I may slip from time to time and call diabetic
16 macular edema DME, but you'll understand what I'm talking
17 about, right?

18 A. Yes.

19 Q. Approximately when did Regeneron begin its clinical
20 development of aflibercept for the treatment of diabetic
21 macular edema?

22 A. Yeah. So like I already said, we actually began in
23 2004 with a study utilizing intravenous delivery of aflibercept
24 for the treatment of DME.

25 Q. And that was a Phase I study?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 A. Yes.

2 Q. Did you eventually also do a Phase I intravitreal
3 study?

4 A. We did. So we eventually did a small study with five
5 patients with intravitreal delivery.

6 Q. Did Regeneron perform Phase II studies in DME?

7 A. Yes. So we conducted the 0706, or DA VINCI study,
8 which was a Phase II study in diabetic macular edema.

9 Q. Did Regeneron perform or conduct Phase III clinical
10 studies in DME?

11 A. Yes. Our Phase III studies were called VIVID and
12 VISTA.

13 Q. I want to put another document before you. I want to
14 direct your attention to, actually, a pair of documents that go
15 together. One is PTX 3150 and the next is PTX 3151, both of
16 which, again, should be in your binder. And we'll put the
17 first of them up on the screen right now.

18 A. Okay.

19 Q. Do you recognize this document, 3150?

20 A. Yes. So this is an email from May 2nd, 2007, with a
21 high-level summary of a DME planning teleconference.

22 Q. Did you attend that DME planning teleconference?

23 A. Yes, I did.

24 Q. So I want to take a look now at the attachment to
25 PTX 3150. This will be PTX 3151.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 Do you recognize this document?

2 A. Yes. So this is a summary of the discussion at that
3 same teleconference.

4 Q. And I want to direct your attention up to the
5 attendees list at the top of the document here. Could you let
6 me know or tell me who the external doctors were who attended
7 this teleconference.

8 A. Sure. So Dr. Lloyd Aiello from Harvard University,
9 Neil Bressler from Wilmer Eye Institute, Quan Nguyen also from
10 Wilmer Eye Institute, and Dr. Jeff Heier from Ophthalmologic
11 Consultants of Boston.

12 Q. Did Regeneron have questions for those assembled
13 doctors about the nature of diabetic macular edema?

14 A. Yes, we did.

15 Q. And I want to take a look at the first bullet here,
16 the first item. Coming out of this call with these assembled
17 doctors, what was your understanding about the progression and
18 the nature of DME relative to, for example, wet AMD?

19 A. Yeah. So I think we understood that, first, this is
20 a very different eye disease because it stems from, obviously,
21 the underlying diabetes that these patients have; and we wanted
22 to know more about exactly how these patients are diagnosed,
23 treated, et cetera.

24 And out of this teleconference we had a better
25 understanding that DME is -- can be not only a slowly

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 progressive disease but also one that fluctuates much more than
2 AMD.

3 So in AMD the typical course for patients was that,
4 within the year after diagnosis with neovascular AMD, patients
5 would precipitously lose vision and that vision could not be
6 regained. But in DME we understood that vision is often more
7 recoverable. And so it was a very different disease from that
8 perspective.

9 THE COURT: Yes, Counsel.

10 MS. MAZZOCHI: Your Honor, I think now we're starting
11 get to the point where Ms. Chu is offering the equivalent of
12 expert testimony. She's just expounding on DME generally, not
13 what did she know back at that time period. She's offered as a
14 30(b)(1).

15 THE COURT: Understood.

16 Stay within the lane of Ms. Chu's capacity as a
17 witness here, Counsel.

18 MR. GREGORY: Yes, Your Honor. My question was
19 specifically about her understanding coming out of this
20 meeting. I'll try to keep it to that narrow lane.

21 THE COURT: Understood.

22 BY MR. GREGORY:

23 Q. Ms. Chu, I want to direct your attention to the third
24 bullet on this page, and I want -- I'm asking some narrow
25 questions here, okay, with the Court's guidance in mind.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 Did Regeneron pose to the assembled doctors on this
2 teleconference any questions about the treatment outcomes of
3 patients with DME?

4 A. Yes. So we were obviously very interested in the
5 current treatment landscape as well as their expectations
6 around what outcomes they could expect or anticipate with the
7 current treatments available, including laser and steroid.

8 Q. And, again, I want to be narrow here. What was your
9 understanding at the time, including coming out of this call
10 with these doctors, about those treatment outcomes?

11 MS. MAZZOCHI: Your Honor, I'm just going to object
12 as well to the relevance of this. We're all -- the questions
13 that are before the Court relate to the validity of these
14 patents with regard to the perspective of a person of ordinary
15 skill in the art. And to the extent she's been offered on
16 issues relating to conception or reduction to practice, again,
17 we don't think that it's been established that she has
18 knowledge on that.

19 But going through all this history is not really
20 relevant to any of the issues here. I'm concerned, again, that
21 Regeneron is trying to just -- actually, I'm not going to
22 predict what's going on in their heads.

23 I'm just going to object that it's not relevant to
24 the issues before the Court.

25 THE COURT: How is this line of questioning relevant,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 Counsel?

2 MR. GREGORY: Of course, Your Honor. While the
3 Federal Circuit has been very, very clear that the inventor's
4 path to the invention cannot negate the invention or prove
5 obviousness, the Federal Circuit has also been equally clear
6 that the inventor's efforts, the roads that they went down, the
7 roads that they did not go down, their understanding can be
8 relevant to, for example, the motivation to combine elements of
9 the prior art or whether there was a reasonable expectation of
10 success.

11 Ms. Chu is here talking about the clinical
12 development. Dr. Yancopoulos's invention occurred within the
13 context of the clinical development program. They didn't occur
14 in a vacuum. It was in the context of this program and
15 Regeneron's understanding of these disease states at the time
16 and of what was going on in the world at this time, and Ms. Chu
17 is providing some of that.

18 THE COURT: Understood. Overruled.

19 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, I'll move on from this
20 document quite quickly.

21 BY MR. GREGORY:

22 Q. I want to look at Item Number 1 once more along with
23 an item from the -- I believe it's the third page of the
24 document. We put it up on the screen here.

25 I want to understand if Regeneron asked the doctors

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 that it assembled about the available DME treatment options at
2 this point in time.

3 A. Yes. So we absolutely had a discussion about
4 available treatments. And, you know, certainly, as I already
5 mentioned, laser and steroid were being used as treatments for
6 DME, and we also understood that the patient's underlying
7 diabetic status was something that was a focus for these
8 physicians as well.

9 Q. I have one more question about this document,
10 Ms. Chu. Can you look at -- I think it's the final page, Item
11 Number 5.

12 Do you see there's a question there or there's an
13 item about competitive landscape and a reference to Lucentis?
14 Do you see that?

15 A. I do see that.

16 Q. What is Lucentis?

17 A. So Lucentis is another anti-VEGF molecule that was
18 being developed by Genentech.

19 Q. And was Regeneron monitoring the status of Lucentis's
20 development?

21 A. Yes. We were very interested in the status as well
22 as their decisions around development with Lucentis.

23 Q. I want to move to a different document. This is
24 going to be DTX 8190, which again should be in your binder. I
25 will also put it up on the screen.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 A. Okay.

2 Q. Do you have DTX 8190 before you?

3 A. Yes, I do.

4 Q. Do you recognize this document?

5 A. Yes. So this is a summary of the EMEA's scientific
6 advice procedure that was requested by Bayer.

7 Q. And I want to look -- and Bayer was your
8 codevelopment partner at the time?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. I want to take a look at the third page of the
11 document, and there's a sentence about midway down -- we have
12 it called up right here -- the sentence that begins "based on
13 this experience."

14 Do you see that sentence?

15 A. Yes, I do see that.

16 Q. First, just to be clear, whose position is being set
17 forth here? Is this Bayer's?

18 A. No. So this would be the joint position between
19 Bayer and Regeneron.

20 Q. And I just want to be very clear. The sentence
21 reads, "Based on this experience, we believe that the doses and
22 dosing intervals for VEGF Trap-Eye for Phase III in DME can be
23 selected based on the results of the Phase II study in patients
24 with AMD."

25 Do you see that?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 A. I do see that.

2 Q. To be clear, was it Bayer or Regeneron's position
3 that they could predict the success of a dosing regimen to be
4 employed in the Phase III trial solely on the basis of this
5 Phase II data?

6 MS. MAZZOCHI: Objection, Your Honor. Again, this is
7 attempting to elicit expert testimony. To the extent
8 Mr. Gregory said that this was going to be relevant to anything
9 on reasonable expectation of success, reasonable expectation of
10 success is assessed from the perspective of a person of
11 ordinary skill in the art. So this is not relevant to that
12 question.

13 If their expert wanted to rely on it because he
14 thought it was relevant to his opinion, he could have. He
15 didn't. So we don't need this -- so this witness's testimony
16 is simply not germane to that issue.

17 MR. GREGORY: Again, Your Honor, the inventor's path
18 can be reflective of, in support, a lack of reasonable
19 expectation of success and a lack of motivation to combine the
20 elements in the prior art. This is a Regeneron -- as she just
21 testified, a Regeneron and Bayer joint document that she saw at
22 the time. I'm asking her to clarify the meaning of this
23 sentence.

24 THE COURT: Understood. And we're going to hear from
25 experts, Counsel, presumably on this very point. Her testimony

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 is not going to be credited with that respect. This strikes me
2 as background and factual information leading up to what we're
3 going to hear from the experts.

4 Objection overruled.

5 BY MR. GREGORY:

6 Q. I'm not sure if I actually got an answer to that
7 question; so I'm just going to repeat it.

8 Looking at this first sentence that reads, "Based on
9 this experience, we believe that the doses and dosing intervals
10 for VEGF Trap-Eye for Phase III and DME could be selected based
11 on the results of the Phase II study in patients with wet AMD."

12 But you had that sentence. My question was, to be
13 clear, was it Bayer or Regeneron's position that they could
14 predict the success of a dosage regimen employed in the
15 Phase III trial solely on the basis of the Phase II data?

16 A. So, obviously, with any scientific experiment there's
17 the possibility of failure. And although we understood that
18 DME, like neovascular AMD, is a disease driven by
19 overexpression of VEGF which causes the pathological
20 neovascularization, we also understood that DME was a very
21 different disease.

22 And so typically in our interactions with health
23 authorities, our approach is to ask questions around minimum
24 requirements. And so this was a question intended to frame
25 support for our proposal in the document but not one that was

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 predictive of what we expected from the Phase III studies
2 certainly.

3 Q. I want to now shift gears and take a look at a new
4 set of documents. These are going to be PTX 3167 and 3168.
5 Again, it's a paper and an attachment that go together.

6 Will you please let me know when you have them in
7 front of you, Ms. Chu.

8 A. Yes, I have them in front of me.

9 Q. So do you recognize PTX 3167?

10 A. So 3167 is an email dated January 31st, 2008,
11 highlighting some scenarios for a meeting that would be held
12 the same day.

13 Q. And the first sentence says, "Enclosed are the DME
14 scenarios that the team has put together for today's meeting"?

15 A. Right. So there was an attachment with a PowerPoint
16 presentation intended to be presented and discussed at the
17 meeting.

18 Q. There's an acronym on this page, JSC. Can you tell
19 us what the JSC was.

20 A. So JSC stands for joint steering committee. And as
21 part of our collaboration agreement with Bayer, we had several
22 joint committees that were formed. The joint development
23 committee was charged with overseeing all development of Eylea
24 and included members from both Regeneron and Bayer. And the
25 joint steering committee was the senior-level committee that

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 included members from both companies.

2 Q. I want to now look at the attachment. So this is
3 PTX 3168. And in particular I want to take a look at the
4 second page -- or the second slide.

5 This is a slide titled "DME Target Product Profile,"
6 right?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. What is a target product profile at Regeneron?

9 A. So a target product profile is a document that we
10 typically put together early in development just highlighting
11 at a high level what we see as the sort of minimal as well as
12 target claims that we would like to strive for for our product
13 to be commercially viable or commercially successful.

14 Q. So to be clear, these TPPs -- these are a regularly
15 prepared type of Regeneron document?

16 A. Yes.

17 Q. And these are commercial documents?

18 A. Typically they're driven by commercial. Clinical
19 obviously has input in terms of the end points and
20 expectations, but this is typically charged -- the
21 responsibility of our commercial group.

22 Q. How many monthly loading doses were set forth in the
23 TPP at this point in time?

24 MS. MAZZOCHI: Again, Your Honor, she's talking
25 about -- she's talking about Regeneron documents, Regeneron's

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 perspective. She's being offered in her 30(b)(1) capacity.
2 She's testified this is a joint collaborative document between
3 Regeneron and Bayer.

4 This is not relevant to any of the issues relating to
5 the commercial success or the motivation or any of the things
6 that Mr. Teagan identified. It's not even relevant to his
7 inventor's path because the cover email said that
8 Mr. Yancopoulos was not present at this meeting. So how can
9 this be in any way, shape, or form relevant to either
10 Dr. Yancopoulos's path or --

11 THE COURT: Commercial success.

12 MS. MAZZOCHI: -- commercial success.

13 THE COURT: Counsel?

14 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, again, it's the path to the
15 invention. And this invention occurred in the context of this
16 broader clinical development program. There is no, I think,
17 dispute about that. All right? It was part of the clinical
18 development program that these inventions occurred in.

19 The path to that invention is relevant to both the
20 motivation to combine elements of the prior art as well as
21 reasonable expectation of success. The roads that Regeneron
22 did go down, the roads that it did not go down, the walls they
23 bumped their heads against, that all goes to those issues.

24 I'm looking at here Regeneron's path to get to five
25 loading doses. And as we see, there's no five loading doses on

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 this page.

2 MS. MAZZOCHI: And, Your Honor, again, motivation,
3 reasonable expectation of success is assessed from the
4 perspective of the person of ordinary skill in the art based on
5 the prior art that was available at the time. These are
6 Regeneron's internal documents. That's completely irrelevant
7 to that question.

8 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, I would point the Court to
9 *Micro Chemical v. Great Plains Chemical*, 103 F.3d 1538, which I
10 think is clear on this point.

11 THE COURT: Understood. Overruled.

12 MR. GREGORY: We can set this document aside.

13 BY MR. GREGORY:

14 Q. We've talked a little about Regeneron's planning for
15 its own clinical trials. I think you mentioned previously that
16 Regeneron was also monitoring the clinical trial work being
17 performed by the folks who were developing Lucentis.

18 Do you recall that?

19 A. Yes.

20 Q. And those companies that was Genentech and Novartis,
21 right?

22 A. Right. So Genentech had rights to Lucentis in the
23 United States and Novartis outside of the United States.

24 Q. Did Genentech and -- or let's frame it like this:
25 Was Lucentis approved for treatment of diabetic macular edema

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 in 2010?

2 A. No. I believe they received their approval for DME
3 in 2012.

4 Q. And were they approved for -- was Lucentis approved
5 for the treatment of diabetic retinopathy in 2010?

6 A. No. That came subsequent to their DME approval.

7 Q. Was Lucentis being explored in clinical trials for
8 the treatment of DME in 2010?

9 MS. MAZZOCHI: Again, Your Honor --

10 THE COURT: Stop saying "again." What's the
11 objection?

12 MS. MAZZOCHI: I object that he hasn't established
13 this is her own personal knowledge. Again, she --

14 THE COURT: Understood. Sustained.

15 BY MR. GREGORY:

16 Q. Ms. Chu --

17 MR. GREGORY: May I try to lay a foundation, Your
18 Honor?

19 THE COURT: I would encourage you to do so if you
20 want an answer to that question ultimately, yes, sir.

21 MR. GREGORY: Thank you.

22 BY MR. GREGORY:

23 Q. Ms. Chu, were you monitoring -- you personally
24 monitoring the status of Lucentis's clinical development in
25 mid-2010?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 A. Yes. It was part of my role to understand what the
2 competitive landscape was.

3 Q. Did you have an understanding of -- I'm asking a
4 narrow question right now.

5 Did you have an understanding of what clinical trials
6 were -- of any clinical trials that were being performed with
7 Lucentis in 2010?

8 A. So the Phase III RISE and RIDE trials were ongoing as
9 well as, during that period of time, Novartis had a couple of
10 studies called the RESOLVE and RESTORE trials.

11 Q. And did you personally have knowledge of what the
12 dosing regimens were that were being tested in those trials in
13 2010?

14 A. So in RISE and RIDE, it was both .3 and .5 milligram
15 monthly compared to sham. And in the RESOLVE and RESTORE
16 trials -- in RESOLVE it was .3 and .5 milligrams with three
17 initial monthly doses with the ability to double the dose at
18 month one followed by prn dosing. And RESTORE
19 was .5 milligrams with three initial monthly doses followed by
20 prn .5 milligrams, three initial monthly doses followed by prn
21 plus laser photocoagulation. And the control in that group was
22 laser photocoagulation.

23 Q. Okay. I want to talk about what Regeneron was doing
24 at this same point in time. In mid-2010 what was
25 Regeneron's -- let me reframe the question.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 In mid-2010 was there a Regeneron Phase II trial
2 ongoing?

3 A. Yes. So the 0706, or DA VINCI, trial was ongoing in
4 2010.

5 Q. And in mid-2010 had Regeneron received any results
6 from the DA VINCI Phase II DME trial?

7 MS. MAZZOCHI: Again, Your Honor, can she please not
8 speak on behalf of Regeneron but on her own personal knowledge.

9 THE COURT: Sustained.

10 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, I'm asking if the company
11 received it. I can reframe the question if defense counsel
12 would like.

13 THE COURT: Please.

14 BY MR. GREGORY:

15 Q. Ms. Chu, were you aware of any preliminary results
16 from the Phase II DA VINCI trial as of mid-2010?

17 A. So the DA VINCI trial was a year-long trial with a
18 week 24 primary end point. So at the beginning of 2010 we had
19 received data from the Week 24 primary end point, but the study
20 was ongoing through 52 weeks, or one year.

21 Q. Had you, personally, Ms. Chu, seen by mid-2010 mean
22 visual acuity gain data for the DA VINCI trial up through
23 Week 24?

24 A. Yes. So typically when we execute clinical trials,
25 once the patient has completed the final visit of interest and

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 the data has been entered into the database, there's a process
2 we go through to clean the data and, quote/unquote, lock the
3 database, which is the initiation of the statistical analysis.

4 And then the output from the statistical analysis is
5 provided to the clinical group, where we review the detailed
6 data and typically summarize it in PowerPoint presentation
7 format.

8 Q. I want to skip ahead a little bit, then, from
9 mid-2010 to the fall. Let's look at PTX 3131 and PTX 3133.

10 Do you recognize this document -- or these documents,
11 Ms. Chu?

12 A. Yes. So this is an email dated October 6th, 2010,
13 circulating PowerPoint slides related to an upcoming program
14 strategy meeting for VEGF Trap-Eye, or aflibercept.

15 Q. And I want to take a look, then, at the attachment,
16 the slide deck. So this is PTX 3133. Can you please direct
17 your attention to page 11 of that deck.

18 A. Okay.

19 Q. Do you have an understanding at this point in the --
20 in October of 2010 as to what the planning was as to the design
21 of Regeneron's Phase III DME trial?

22 A. So at this time we were planning on a three-arm
23 study, 2 milligrams aflibercept every four weeks, 2 milligrams
24 every eight weeks after three initial monthly doses, compared
25 to macular laser photocoagulation.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 Q. Okay. And to be clear, your understanding at this
2 point in time was that Regeneron was not planning for a
3 five-loading-dose study?

4 A. That's correct.

5 MS. MAZZOCHI: Objection. She can't speak to what
6 Regeneron was thinking; she can only speak to her own personal
7 knowledge.

8 THE COURT: Sustained.

9 BY MR. GREGORY:

10 Q. Ms. Chu, I want to phrase this question very
11 narrowly. I want you to listen to my question. Okay?

12 Did you have an understanding -- you personally have
13 an understanding of what the planning was as of October 2010 as
14 to the number of loading doses in Regeneron's Phase III
15 clinical trial?

16 A. Yes. At this time we were still considering three
17 initial monthly doses followed by every eight weeks as one of
18 the dosing arms for the clinical trial.

19 Q. Ms. Chu, again, to reiterate, at this point in time
20 in October of 2010, how long had you had the Week 24 DA VINCI
21 data? Was that nine months at that point?

22 A. I believe we had received it in January of that year;
23 so we had had it for nine or ten months.

24 Q. Let's take a look next at PTX 3188.

25 Do you recognize this document, Ms. Chu?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 A. Yes. So this is a slide presentation from the joint
2 development committee to the joint steering committee.

3 Q. And I just forget if you provided this elaboration
4 already. So I apologize. I think you've told us what the
5 joint steering committee was.

6 What is the joint development committee?

7 A. Yeah. So, again, that's the joint committee between
8 Bayer and Regeneron responsible for the development decisions
9 for aflibercept.

10 Q. I want to take a look at -- let's just skip ahead
11 here to -- skip ahead here to page 4. There's a reference on
12 this page to the EMA. Do you know what the EMA is?

13 A. So that's the European Medicines Agency.

14 Q. And there's a -- the title here is "EMA - Outcome and
15 Consequences." I guess the title of the slide is "Health
16 Authority Feedback."

17 Do you see that?

18 A. Yes, I do see that.

19 Q. Okay. What was your understanding of what was being
20 discussed here?

21 A. Yeah. So at this time we were seeking health
22 authority feedback about our plans for DME development. And
23 the EMA had pointed out that they did not feel that our AMD
24 safety data could be extrapolated completely to the diabetic
25 macular edema population.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 Q. Let's jump to page 19 of this same deck.

2 And do you see the reference there again in the
3 middle of the page to the safety data?

4 A. Give me one minute.

5 Yes, I do.

6 Q. What was your understanding at this time as to EMA's
7 position on that?

8 A. So their position was that the diabetic population
9 was distinct from the neovascular AMD population, that this
10 is -- while a younger -- somewhat younger population, that they
11 also had several comorbidities and an increased -- so, for
12 instance, diabetics are more frequently hypertensive as well as
13 they have an increased risk of what we would term
14 thromboembolic events; so things like stroke and heart attack.

15 And we knew that VEGF inhibitors like aflibercept had
16 certain class effects, especially when delivered systemically,
17 that included increased blood pressure as well as an increased
18 risk for thromboembolic events. So this was a population that
19 we felt could be particularly vulnerable to systemic exposure.

20 Q. Let's next look at PTX 1028C. Let's put the first
21 page of this up on the screen for you here.

22 MS. MAZZOCHI: Your Honor, that last part of her
23 answer where she started off from diabetic hypertension through
24 what they thought, that's either getting into what Regeneron
25 thought or it's expert testimony.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 THE COURT: Understood. Motion to strike denied,
2 though.

3 Go ahead, Counsel.

4 MR. GREGORY: Thank you, Your Honor.

5 BY MR. GREGORY:

6 Q. PTX 1028C, which is up on the screen and also should
7 be in the binder, do you recognize this document?

8 A. Yes. So this a PowerPoint presentation of the
9 one-year data from DA VINCI.

10 Q. DA VINCI again, that's the Phase II DME trial?

11 A. That's right.

12 Q. And how would a document like this -- I think you may
13 have already talked a little bit on this subject, but how would
14 a document like this typically be prepared at Regeneron in your
15 experience?

16 A. Yeah. So as I mentioned -- so the process is
17 typically that once the last patient completes their -- that
18 last visit of interest, there's a process where the data is
19 entered into the database and any questions about the data are
20 resolved.

21 Once we lock the database, our statisticians then
22 begin their process of analysis. And from that comes a
23 detailed set of what we call tables, figures, and listings,
24 which really is the -- the raw data from the study as well as
25 any aggregate data or analyses that are performed.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 And so the clinical group would be charged with
2 reviewing those tables, figures, and listings and summarizing
3 that in this kind of PowerPoint presentation for disclosure and
4 discussion with management.

5 Q. And so it gets rolled up, then -- the initial set of
6 data gets rolled up through a series of steps into this type of
7 deck?

8 A. That's correct.

9 Q. What becomes of that broader underlying set of data?

10 A. The tables, figures, and listings become the basis
11 for the clinical study report which is eventually provided to
12 health authorities.

13 Q. And what, if anything, does senior management do with
14 that broader set of data at Regeneron typically?

15 A. So I think I already mentioned that our senior
16 management has always been heavily involved in the discussions
17 and decisions. And certainly when we would review this kind of
18 PowerPoint presentation with them, there would often be
19 questions that would require we would pull up raw data. They
20 certainly would have access to the tables, figures, and
21 listings. And frequently they would ask for additional
22 analyses, et cetera. So it was always a very lively
23 discussion.

24 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, permission to approach.

25 THE COURT: Granted.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 BY MR. GREGORY:

2 Q. Ms. Chu, I've just handed you a sizable document
3 marked PTX 1170.

4 Do you recognize that?

5 A. So this appears to be tables, figures, and listings
6 from the DA VINCI study, the 0706 study.

7 Q. Do you recall when a decision was made about the
8 treatment arms to evaluate in Regeneron's eventual Phase III
9 DME trial?

10 A. I don't recall the specific date that a decision was
11 made.

12 Q. Do you recall the general time frame?

13 A. Yes, I do. It would have been the end of 2010 or
14 early -- very early 2011.

15 Q. And in the meeting that we were just looking at where
16 this deck -- the deck we were just looking at, do you remember
17 exactly when that meeting occurred?

18 A. I believe it was the beginning of December.

19 Q. Do you remember who ultimately made the decision
20 about the dosing regimens to be explored in the Phase III DME
21 clinical trial?

22 A. So it was ultimately George's decision to move
23 forward with the five initial monthly doses followed by q8.

24 Q. And George, that's George Yancopoulos?

25 A. Yes. Sorry. That's Dr. Yancopoulos.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 Q. Why do you remember that?

2 A. So part of the landscape in diabetic macular edema is
3 that these are patients that are not only more susceptible to
4 some of what we knew were the potential class effects of
5 anti-VEGF from a safety perspective, but they were also
6 patients that are at working age and have a high burden of
7 healthcare in general.

8 So the pressure was really to minimize the number of
9 doses. Especially in an investigational arm in a trial, we
10 were really seeking to minimize the treatment burden for these
11 patients. And members of the team disagreed with
12 Dr. Yancopoulos' decision, but it -- ultimately it was his
13 decision based on what he felt would optimize outcomes for
14 patients.

15 Q. Did the Phase III trials at Regeneron ultimately
16 conducted in DME, did those have names?

17 A. Yes. So they were called the VIVID and VISTA trials.

18 Q. And just for clarity, what treatment arms were
19 explored in those trials?

20 A. So both studies included a 2-milligram monthly
21 treatment group, a 2-milligram every-eight-week treatment group
22 after five initial monthly doses, and the control group was
23 laser photocoagulation.

24 Q. I want to talk very briefly about Regeneron's
25 development efforts around diabetic retinopathy if that's okay.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 A. Sure.

2 Q. Can we take a look at PTX 3332.

3 Do you recognize this document?

4 A. Yes. So this is a section from our supplementary
5 BLA, or biologics licensing application, for diabetic
6 retinopathy in DME.

7 Q. And there's a reference on -- actually, why don't we
8 go down to page 3 first. That's probably the easiest place to
9 look.

10 Do you see there's this heading "Summary of the
11 Requests for Breakthrough Therapy Designations"?

12 A. Yes, I see that.

13 Q. What's your understanding of what a breakthrough
14 therapy designation is?

15 A. So a breakthrough therapy designation is a relatively
16 new designation that the FDA allows for products that have
17 shown -- that are indicated for a severe disease and have shown
18 preliminary evidence of significant effect over standard of
19 care or available treatments.

20 And it allows many aspects of what we call fast-track
21 designation, which essentially facilitates more frequent and
22 more informal interactions with the FDA during your
23 development.

24 Q. What breakthrough therapy designation -- or what
25 indication did Regeneron seek a breakthrough therapy

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 designation at this time?

2 MS. MAZZOCHI: Again, Your Honor, objection. In her
3 personal capacity, not on behalf of Regeneron.

4 THE COURT: Understood. But given her position and
5 testimony she's offered, I do believe this witness would have
6 personal knowledge about that. Overruled.

7 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, I'll just -- we're coming
8 up to the end here. I have three questions left, I think.

9 THE COURT: Understood.

10 BY MR. GREGORY:

11 Q. For what indication did Regeneron seek breakthrough
12 therapy designation for aflibercept?

13 A. We were seeking a breakthrough therapy designation
14 for diabetic retinopathy broadly.

15 Q. Can you turn to page 43 of this document.

16 And embedded within this document we just have this
17 email here from Jennifer Woo.

18 Do you see that?

19 A. I do see that.

20 Q. And could you explain to us what's being discussed
21 here.

22 MS. MAZZOCHI: Objection, Your Honor. Foundation.
23 She's not on this email.

24 THE COURT: Sustained.

25 BY MR. GREGORY:

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 Q. For clarity, Ms. Chu, let's look back to the first
2 page of the document.

3 Could you explain what this document is broadly
4 speaking.

5 A. Yes. So this is a section of the SBLA that would
6 summarize our interactions with the FDA leading up to the
7 filing.

8 Q. Did you review this document at the time?

9 A. Yes, I did.

10 Q. You're familiar with this document?

11 A. I am.

12 Q. The email that we were just talking about, that's not
13 a standalone email; it's an email that's included within this
14 section of the supplemental BLA, correct?

15 A. That's correct. So that was a communication between
16 our regulatory group and the FDA that was included as part of
17 this summary or interactions with the FDA.

18 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, with your permission, I'd
19 like to examine her about that.

20 THE COURT: You may proceed, Counsel.

21 BY MR. GREGORY:

22 Q. Ms. Chu, could you look at page 43 again.

23 A. Sure.

24 Q. Could you explain to us what's being discussed here.

25 A. So this is in regards to a teleconference that we had

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 to the -- with the FDA on August 21st, 2014, to discuss our
2 breakthrough application.

3 Q. And what did FDA do with your breakthrough therapy
4 designation application for the treatment of DR, diabetic
5 retinopathy?

6 A. They did not grant our breakthrough designation for
7 DR.

8 Q. And what was your understanding at the time as to the
9 rationale for that?

10 A. My understanding was that they did not consider the
11 evidence we had provided of patients achieving a
12 two-or-more-step improvement in diabetic retinopathy severity
13 in the VIVID and VISTA trials, which enrolled patients with
14 DME, as representative of the broader DR population.

15 Q. Did Regeneron ultimately pursue or forgo approval in
16 DR alone?

17 A. Yes, we did. We subsequently conducted an additional
18 Phase III trial called the PANORAMA trial in patients with
19 diabetic retinopathy without DME.

20 Q. And what treatment regimens did Regeneron test in
21 that trial?

22 A. In the PANORAMA trial we included 2 milligrams dosed
23 every eight weeks after five initial monthly doses,
24 2 milligrams dosed every 16 weeks after three initial monthly
25 doses and 1q8 interval, and the control group in that study was

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - DIRECT

1 sham or observation.

2 Q. And so those are not exactly the same dosage regimens
3 that you tested in the Phase III DME trials, right?

4 A. The group that received five initial monthly doses,
5 then every-eight-week dosing, that was the same group as had
6 been used in the VIVID and VISTA studies.

7 Q. Was there an additional arm, though?

8 A. Yes. So there was the additional treatment arm with
9 the q16 dosing after the three initial monthly doses and 1q8
10 interval.

11 Q. What was your understanding of the basis for
12 including that additional treatment arm?

13 A. The basis was that again -- so patients with DME have
14 underlying diabetic retinopathy, but patients can have even
15 severe diabetic retinopathy and not have DME, and those
16 patients can have very good vision.

17 So again, the focus was really on minimizing the
18 treatment burden as well as minimizing the risk, especially for
19 the diabetic retinopathy patients that did not have immediate
20 vision loss.

21 MR. GREGORY: Thank you, Ms. Chu. I have no further
22 questions at this time, Your Honor. I may have some exhibits
23 to move into evidence before the witness leaves the stand, but
24 I'll wait till the end of cross-examination.

25 THE COURT: Understood.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Counsel, you may proceed with cross.

2 MS. MAZZOCHI: Thank you, Your Honor.

3 May I proceed, Your Honor?

4 THE COURT: You may.

5 CROSS-EXAMINATION

6 BY MS. MAZZOCHI:

7 Q. Ms. Chu, I'm going to show you DTX 5385, exhibit
8 page 1.

9 MS. MAZZOCHI: I'm sorry, Your Honor. May we do the
10 ritual distribution of the binders?

11 THE COURT: Please.

12 BY MS. MAZZOCHI:

13 Q. Ms. Chu, I'm going to show you DTX 5385, exhibit
14 page 1, which is titled the "JDC Update to the JSC Clinical
15 Plan" dated January 26, 2011.

16 And you participated in that discussion, right?

17 A. I don't remember the specific meeting, but this is
18 the type of meeting that I would participate in.

19 Q. Let's go to the second page of the exhibit.

20 You can confirm that the JSC did include Bayer
21 employees, right?

22 A. Correct.

23 Q. And the JDC, which included Regeneron and Bayer
24 employees, endorsed running Study B?

25 A. Yes, I see that here.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Q. Let me take you to the seventh page of DTX 5385.
2 This confirms that the choice of five loading doses for the DME
3 indication was a compromise of the joint development committee,
4 right?

5 A. Well, this indicates that it was a suggested
6 compromise.

7 Q. And it says five loading doses was the suggested
8 compromise for DME?

9 A. It does suggest that, but again, the caveat here is
10 that the -- this included commercial and market access
11 perspective as well.

12 Q. Okay. But whatever the case may be, five loading
13 doses was the compromise position with the JDC, right?

14 A. It was suggested, yes.

15 Q. Okay. And it says in parenthesis after five loading
16 doses, "equals one additional dose," right?

17 A. I see where it says that, yes.

18 Q. And your understanding that this five loading dose
19 compromise from the JDC meant just adding in one additional
20 dose at the 12-week mark, right?

21 A. So, again, the proposal that had been being discussed
22 was the same as what we had utilized in the AMD Phase III
23 trials, which was three initial monthly doses, so -- followed
24 by every eight weeks. So this did represent, at least in the
25 first year, an additional dose.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Q. Right. And that additional dose was going to come at
2 the 12-week mark, right?

3 A. Correct.

4 Q. And one of the reasons why this was viewed as an
5 attractive compromise is because it would not have involved
6 changing the primary end point, which would have required a
7 substantial protocol amendment, true?

8 A. That's actually not true. So the primary end point
9 in these studies was a discussion point from the very beginning
10 because there were -- the EMA accepted a one-year primary end
11 point in Phase III studies with diabetic macular edema while at
12 this time the FDA required a two-year primary end point.

13 Q. Let's take a look at page 21 in the exhibit where
14 it's talking about Study B and loading doses. If we look at
15 the second dash under the heading "Operational aspects of a
16 potential change of number of loading doses," can you read what
17 it says, please.

18 A. So sorry. Do you just want me to read this?

19 Q. Yeah.

20 A. So the second main bullet is "Operational aspects of
21 a potential change of number of loading doses," subbullet,
22 "Protocol amendment required," subbullet, "Four or six loading
23 doses would result in a shift of the primary end point visit to
24 maintain the paradigm that efficacy should be determined four
25 weeks after the last injection in the 2q8 arm (equals

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 substantial protocol amendment)."

2 Q. So we can agree, then, that one of the benefits of
3 the five loading doses as compared to four or six is that it
4 would not require a shift of the primary end point visits to
5 maintain the paradigm that efficacy should be determined four
6 weeks after the last injection in the 2q8 arm, which would have
7 been a substantial protocol amendment?

8 A. Well, these were design considerations, yes.

9 Q. Okay. Ms. Chu, let's take a look at PTX 3332,
10 exhibit page 16, the breakthrough therapy application that
11 Regeneron submitted to the FDA, dated July 14th, 2014, which
12 you discussed on your direct examination. And I'd like to
13 direct you to the last paragraph heading "Overall Summary of
14 Study Results."

15 Do you have that on screen?

16 A. Sorry. What page is this on?

17 Q. Exhibit page 16. Well, it will say 12 of 30 on the
18 bottom, but it's PTX exhibit page 16. It's on the screen in
19 front of you as well.

20 A. Yes, I see that section.

21 Q. The data that Regeneron relied on as the basis for
22 this application was the Phase III VIVID and VISTA studies,
23 right?

24 A. Correct.

25 Q. But neither the clinical trial protocol for the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Phase III VIVID or VISTA studies are set forth in the '572 or
2 '601 patents that are at issue here, right?

3 A. I would have to look at the patents to be able to
4 answer that sufficiently.

5 Q. Do you recall being asked at your deposition, "If you
6 can take a look at the '601 patent, is the clinical trial
7 protocol for the Phase III VIVID or VISTA studies set forth in
8 any of the patent examples?"

9 You gave that same answer. And then after your
10 review you said, "So in my review of Patent '601, I do not see
11 a description of the VIVID or VISTA trials given as an
12 example."

13 Does that help to refresh your recollection?

14 A. Okay.

15 Q. Let me call up DTX 19, exhibit page 2.

16 You're a named inventor on this patent, true?

17 A. Sorry. Give me a minute.

18 Yes, I am a named inventor on this patent.

19 Q. So this is U.S. Patent Number 10,973,879?

20 A. Is that a question?

21 Q. Yes.

22 A. Yes, 973,879.

23 Q. Dr. Yancopoulos is not listed as a named inventor on
24 this patent, right?

25 A. No, he is not.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Q. Let's go to DTX 19 at exhibit page 38, right-hand
2 column 2, lines 48 to 67. We've got that on the screen in
3 front of you.

4 A. Okay.

5 Q. Ms. Chu, can you confirm that in your patent, DTX 19,
6 lines 48 to 49, you stated that "The present invention provides
7 a method for treating diabetic retinopathy," right?

8 A. So our process at Regeneron is that we, as clinicians
9 and scientists, provide information to our intellectual
10 property attorneys for the purpose of patent applications and
11 documents.

12 Q. Ms. Chu, I'm going to say my question again.

13 In your patent, DTX 19, lines 48 to 49, you stated,
14 "The present invention provides a method for treating diabetic
15 retinopathy," right?

16 A. That is what the patent states.

17 Q. Okay. And if we go down a few more lines to the
18 description of the dosing regimen you consider to be part of
19 the present invention, can you confirm that dosing regimen (ii)
20 is listed as "3 or 4 or 5 monthly doses followed by one or more
21 secondary doses every 8 weeks, wherein the secondary doses
22 initiate 8 weeks after the final of the 3 or 4 or 5 monthly
23 doses and continues with a dose given every 8 weeks
24 thereafter"?

25 Do you see that?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 A. I do see that.

2 Q. And that's something that your '879 patent, DTX 19,
3 said was your invention, right?

4 A. That's correct.

5 Q. Okay. Let's go to the sixth exhibit page of DTX 19.
6 Do you have a Figure 1 there?

7 A. Sorry. What page?

8 Q. The 19th -- I'm sorry. It's the sixth page of the
9 exhibit, DTX 19.006, where Figure 1 appears.

10 A. Yes, I do see that figure.

11 Q. Does Figure 1 display a dosing regimen with what
12 could be called three monthly doses followed by doses every
13 eight weeks where the eight-week doses initiate after the final
14 of the three monthly loading doses and continue with a dose
15 given every eight weeks thereafter?

16 A. Sorry. Could you just restate your question.

17 Q. Sure. Looking at Figure 1, does that figure show a
18 dosing regimen with three monthly doses, or what could be
19 called three monthly doses, followed by doses every eight weeks
20 where the eight-week doses initiate after the final of the
21 three monthly loading doses and continue with a dose given
22 every eight weeks thereafter?

23 A. Yes. So my understanding of this figure is that
24 there's an initial dose given at baseline, followed by
25 secondary doses at -- it appears to be four and eight weeks,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 followed by a tertiary doses, I think, every eight weeks apart.

2 Q. And if we were to put an arrow at the 12-week mark in
3 your patent's Figure 1, that would be a dosing regimen that
4 would correspond to what we could call five monthly loading
5 doses followed by one or more doses every eight weeks, wherein
6 the eight-week dosing is initiated after the final of the fifth
7 monthly loading dose is given, right?

8 A. Yes. That would be a graphical representation of
9 that dosing regimen.

10 Q. You, at your deposition, did not identify George
11 Yancopoulos as the person who first came up with the idea of a
12 five-loading-dose regimen for diabetic retinopathy that we see
13 in Claim 18 of the '601 patent, right?

14 A. So as I mentioned previously, our process was that
15 the team was charged with bringing proposals for discussion and
16 decision-making by senior management; so I don't know who first
17 came up with that idea.

18 Q. But Dr. Yancopoulos did not have any input into the
19 particular methodology for the PANORAMA study, for example,
20 right?

21 A. He definitely did have input into the methodology for
22 the PANORAMA study.

23 Q. Let me bring -- let me have you take a look at
24 DTX 7212, exhibit page 0024, your deposition testimony. And
25 just to give you context, we'll start at line 17 of page 91 and

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 we'll go over to page 92, line 6.

2 Starting at line 25, referring to Dr. Yancopoulos --

3 A. Sorry. I don't have a page 92.

4 Q. No. It'll be transcript page 92. So it's exhibit
5 page 24.

6 THE COURT: Ma'am, if you'll see, there's actually
7 four pages on each page. The upper right-hand corner will be
8 the second page number that counsel's referring to.

9 BY MS. MAZZOCHI:

10 Q. And we'll call it up on the screen for you as well.

11 The question was, referring to George Yancopoulos,
12 "And did he have any input into what this particular
13 methodology in the PANORAMA study was going to look like?"

14 And did you give the answer, "I don't recall the
15 specific meeting, but we most certainly would have discussed it
16 with him."

17 A. Yes. I think that's consistent also with our process
18 that I just described.

19 Q. But the day-to-day involvement was really more with
20 the clinical team, yourself and Dr. Vitti, right?

21 A. And Dr. Berliner, who is also on the patent.

22 Yes. I mean, as a clinical team, we're obviously
23 responsible for providing proposals around future development
24 and development strategies.

25 Q. You mentioned something about filing patent

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 applications.

2 Was it your understanding that patent applications
3 would be filed on all of the methods that were going to be
4 tested by Regeneron in human Phase III clinical trials?

5 A. That was not my understanding. So, typically, we
6 would have discussions with our intellectual property attorneys
7 about the programs and planning and the decisions around what
8 patent applications were to be filed or made by them.

9 Q. Again, let me pull up your deposition testimony,
10 DTX 7212, page 34. Your testimony at lines 31:12 to 22.

11 Were you asked the question, "Was it Regeneron's
12 custom and practice to file patent applications on all of the
13 methods that it was going to test in human Phase III clinical
14 trials?"

15 And did you give the answer, "It's my understanding
16 that Regeneron always seeks to patent any novel inventive
17 aspects of both our -- of any aspect of our development
18 process."

19 Was that the question you asked and the answer you
20 gave?

21 A. That's the answer that I gave, but I don't think
22 that's inconsistent with the idea that there's a decision made
23 about what aspects of our development program is inventive and
24 possible to patent.

25 Q. But we can agree that Regeneron put a five monthly

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 loading dose regimen followed by every-eight-week dosing for
2 diabetic retinopathy in both your '879 patent, saying it was
3 your invention, as well as in the '601 patent's Claim 18 and
4 19, right?

5 A. I understand that regimen appears in both patents.

6 Q. Okay. Ms. Chu, during your time at Regeneron, did
7 you also become aware of the Protocol T study that was
8 conducted by the Diabetic Retinopathy Clinical Research
9 Network?

10 A. Yes, I'm aware of that study.

11 Q. But that Protocol T regimen was not Regeneron's idea,
12 was it?

13 A. Well, the Protocol T study was conducted by the DRCR,
14 which is a collaborative group funded by the National Eye
15 Institute, and Regeneron did have input into the study design
16 and provided drug for the conduct of the study.

17 Q. Well, let's take a look at what I will designate as
18 DTX 9002 and exhibit page 1.

19 Can you confirm this is an email forwarding
20 Protocol T color handouts to Regeneron dated Saturday,
21 March 31st, 2012?

22 A. So I can see this is an email dated March 31st, 2012,
23 regarding Protocol T color handouts to Regeneron.

24 Q. Do you know based on -- given your capacity and your
25 involvement in clinical trials, whether Regeneron had ever

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 given any input into the Protocol T protocol prior to this
2 date?

3 A. I'm not on this email, and I don't recall
4 specifically what date we had input into the Protocol T
5 protocol.

6 Q. Well, let's go to the eighth page of the exhibit.
7 And there is a slide that's titled "Visit/Treatment Schedule
8 Year 1, the 4:2:7 Guide."

9 Do you see that?

10 A. I see.

11 Q. Is this Protocol T regimen consistent with your
12 recollection?

13 A. With the Protocol T study design?

14 Q. Yes.

15 A. Yes. So I understand this to be the Protocol T
16 dosing regimens.

17 Q. And so here for aflibercept, they proposed a
18 mandatory four loading doses every four weeks at the start of
19 the regimen for Protocol T, right?

20 A. Yes. So this was a comparative study with three
21 different anti-VEGF molecules, and all three dosing groups
22 received four initial monthly injections.

23 Q. And then on weeks -- those monthly loading doses were
24 to be given on weeks 0, 4, 8, and 12, right?

25 A. That was the proposed schedule, yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Q. Then Protocol T allowed for two required injections
2 if the patient hadn't reached success; but if they had, they
3 could skip a dose at their next four-week visit, right?

4 A. That was the dosing regimen outlined in the protocol.

5 Q. And, likewise, in the weeks after that, when the
6 patient showed up at their next four-week office visit, if they
7 had not reached success, they were dosed; if they had reached
8 success, they would skip and come back in four weeks, right?

9 A. Yes, that's correct. So they were essentially dosed
10 as needed during that period of time, but the visits were still
11 every four weeks.

12 Q. And that regimen would include an eight-week interval
13 then, right?

14 A. Well, not necessarily. I mean, obviously, each
15 individual patient was dosed based on the criteria outlined in
16 the protocol.

17 Q. Right. But this regimen permitted an eight-week
18 dosing regimen dosing interval, right?

19 A. Potentially. But, again, it wasn't specifically
20 stated that that was the intent.

21 Q. But -- and, likewise, this Protocol T could permit
22 for five monthly doses before any extended dosing interval,
23 right? Just depended on the characteristics of the patient, to
24 your understanding?

25 A. It could. But, again, it would be based on the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 individual patient status.

2 Q. And this Protocol T is the only dosing regimen you're
3 aware of where aflibercept was tested head-to-head with
4 ranibizumab and performed better, right?

5 A. Yes, that's correct.

6 Q. But this isn't the dosing regimen in the FDA-approved
7 labeling for Eylea, is it?

8 A. No, it is not. It's not the approved regimen for
9 ranibizumab either.

10 Q. Ms. Chu, let's put DTX 216 before you.

11 Can you confirm this is a March 21st, 2006, email
12 from Jesse Cedarbaum to you and others?

13 A. Yes, I see that this is an email dated March 21st,
14 2006, from Jesse Cedarbaum and I'm one of the recipients.

15 Q. And according to the email, the attachment is the
16 final version of the 0502 Part A abstract for the American
17 Society of Retinal Specialists, ASRS, meeting in the fall, yes?

18 A. Actually, the email states that this is the 0508
19 Part A abstract for ASRS.

20 Q. Well, if you take a look at the attachments line,
21 does it say 0502A ASRS attachments -- ASRS abstract?

22 A. Yes. The attachment was titled "0502A ASRS
23 Abstract."

24 Q. If you take a look at the second page of DTX 216,
25 does this confirm that you were an author on the abstract to

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 present the results of the Phase I study of intravitreal VEGF
2 Trap in 2006?

3 A. Yes. So I was an author on this abstract of the
4 Phase I study in neovascular AMD.

5 Q. Right. And based on this description here of this
6 being the CLEAR-IT 1 study, this was the 0502 protocol, right?

7 A. Right.

8 Q. Not 0508?

9 A. Correct.

10 Q. And this CLEAR-IT 1 study is where Regeneron first
11 dosed aflibercept in humans intravitreally, right?

12 A. Right. So this is summarizing the dose escalation
13 portion of this study, which is where we dosed a small number
14 of patients across a range of doses.

15 Q. And Dr. Yancopoulos is not listed as a coauthor on
16 this study, is he?

17 A. He is not on this particular abstract, no.

18 Q. But you understand this study is found in Example 1
19 of the '572 and '601 patents?

20 A. Again, I'd have to review the patent to be sure.

21 Q. Well, maybe we can shortcut it. I'm happy to call up
22 your deposition testimony, page 169, lines 14 to -- actually
23 we'll do lines 13 to 17.

24 So this is exhibit page 43.

25 THE COURT: What page of the deposition again,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Counsel?

2 MS. MAZZOCHI: It's deposition page 169.

3 THE COURT: Thank you.

4 BY MS. MAZZOCHI:

5 Q. And, Ms. Chu, did you confirm -- "So the study in
6 Example 1 was referred to as the CLEAR-IT 1 study. The study
7 in Example 2 was the CLEAR-IT 2 study."

8 Was that the testimony you gave?

9 A. Yes, but I had -- I was provided with the patents as
10 an exhibit at that time. So I'd be happy to look at the
11 patents now. Are they in my binder?

12 Q. Was that true testimony you gave at your prior
13 deposition?

14 A. Again, if I had the patents in front of me, I'd be
15 happy to take a look and confirm this.

16 Q. Well, let's go ahead and put up the '601 patent,
17 PTX 1, exhibit page 14, the '601 patent at Column 8, lines 3 to
18 27, which corresponds to Example 1.

19 Do you have that there on the screen?

20 A. I see it on the screen. Just give me a minute to
21 find it in the document.

22 Sorry. What page would it be on?

23 Q. Exhibit page 14.

24 A. Okay.

25 Q. So this is the CLEAR-IT 1 study, right?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 A. So Example 1 appears to be the CLEAR-IT 1 study, the
2 Phase I study in neovascular AMD, yes.

3 Q. And looking at the dose listed here in Example 1,
4 what was the volume injected into the eye in your 2005
5 CLEAR-IT 1 study? Was it 0.05 or 0.1 milliliters?

6 A. So at this time we were using 100 microliters
7 or .1 milliliters.

8 Q. At least the 4-milligram dose concentrations that
9 were administered in the study were formed at a 40 mg/mL
10 concentration, correct?

11 A. In this study, yes.

12 Q. Regeneron put exactly what amounts it was dosing in
13 its Phase I protocol documents, right?

14 A. Well, we certainly outlined the doses and dose volume
15 intended.

16 Q. Okay. Let me take a look at what I've marked as
17 DTX 9005.

18 Can you confirm that this is an April 5th, 2005,
19 email to -- that you were cc'd on from Sri Vuthoori?

20 A. Sorry. Did you say DTX 9005?

21 Q. Yes.

22 A. I don't have that in my binder.

23 Q. You should. It should be right before PTX 1.

24 A. Okay. I see it now. Sorry.

25 Q. Can you confirm that this is an email to you and

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 others dated April 5th, 2005, from Ms. Vuthoori?

2 A. Yes. So this is an email from Sri Vuthoori, dated
3 April 5th, 2005, and I am a recipient of this email.

4 Q. If we look at the email attachment, can you confirm
5 that this is Regeneron's April 5th, 2005, protocol for the
6 intravitreal Phase I study, protocol VGFT OD 0502?

7 A. So this is what at the time we called a pass
8 document, which was basically a synopsis intended to be the
9 basis for the final protocol.

10 Q. But you're familiar with this document?

11 A. Yes. This is the type of document that we would have
12 written, again, to lead into the writing of the final protocol.

13 Q. Let's go to the 23rd page of the exhibit that
14 describes the clinical drug supply profile.

15 Do you have that on screen?

16 A. Yes, I see that.

17 Q. All right. And, again, this confirms that the
18 4-milligram doses were given at a concentration of 40 mg/mL in
19 the CLEAR-IT 1 clinical trial that you published in your
20 abstract in or about 2006?

21 A. Yes, in the 100 microliter volume.

22 Q. And Regeneron, according to this document, also
23 proposed having a percent overage in the vials of 30 percent,
24 right?

25 A. That appears to be in this document, yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Q. And the total fill size was 1.2 milliliters with a
2 max withdrawable volume of 1 milliliter, right?

3 A. That's what's specified in this document, but I'm not
4 the manufacturing expert. So if you're asking me to confirm
5 that that's what was actually in the trial, I would defer that
6 to the expert.

7 Q. Well, this is what you were using to prepare the
8 protocol, right?

9 A. These were assumptions that were being used to
10 prepare the protocol, yes.

11 Q. Now, we've talked about the ASRS meeting in 2006, but
12 Regeneron also presented your CLEAR-IT 1 study at the ARVO
13 meeting in Ft. Lauderdale, right?

14 A. I don't recall, but that's typically one of the
15 meetings where we would seek to present data.

16 Q. And were you a named author on the abstract that was
17 presented at the 2006 ARVO meeting?

18 A. I don't recall specifically.

19 Q. Well, let's take a look at DTX 9003.

20 This is titled "Results of a Phase I,
21 dose-escalation, safety, tolerability, and bioactivity study of
22 intravitreal VEGF Trap in patients with neovascular
23 age-related macular degeneration."

24 Do you have that?

25 A. Yes, I see that.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Q. All right. And you're a named author on that one?

2 A. Yes, I am.

3 Q. And this is referring to the CLEAR-IT 1 study?

4 A. Yes, this would have been the CLEAR-IT 1 study.

5 Q. And that ARVO meeting where CLEAR-IT 1 was presented
6 was held between April 30th and May 4, 2006, right?

7 A. I don't remember the exact dates, but that's the time
8 of year where it's typically held.

9 Q. Okay. Well, just to tie it up because I don't want
10 you to have to take my word for it, let me give you a document.
11 It should be in your binder. And I apologize. I think it's
12 the very last one that's entered in there. It's got the
13 designation DTX 9006.

14 I'll go to exhibit page 12, citation Number 56.

15 And is that referring to your abstract results of the
16 Phase I dose-escalation, safety, tolerability, and bioactivity
17 study of intravitreal VEGF Trap in patients with neovascular
18 age-related macular degeneration as something presented at the
19 annual meeting of the -- of ARVO between April 30th to May 4th,
20 Fort Lauderdale, 2006?

21 A. Yes. This appears to be a reference to that
22 abstract.

23 Q. Now, Ms. Chu, you indicated that Regeneron was
24 keeping some things secret, but I'd like you to -- when it came
25 to its clinical trial work, but I'd like you to take a look at

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 DTX 4957.

2 Do you see that this is Regeneron's Form 10-K for the
3 prior year 2005?

4 A. I see that this is a Regeneron Form 10-K, yes.

5 Q. I'd like to direct your attention to this exhibit
6 page 5 in DTX 4957 and specifically under the heading "VEGF
7 Trap - Eye Diseases."

8 And we'll pull that up for you on the screen.

9 Do you see that?

10 A. Yes, I see that.

11 Q. All right. And do you see in the second paragraph it
12 says, "In February 2006, Regeneron announced positive
13 preliminary results from an ongoing Phase I dose-escalation
14 study of VEGF Trap-Eye"?

15 That was your ASRS abstract, right?

16 A. So I actually don't know exactly which meeting this
17 is referring to. February -- ASRS is typically held later in
18 the summer. But it has moved around over the years; so it
19 could be referring to the ASRS abstract.

20 Q. All right. Well, can we at least agree that your
21 CLEAR-IT 1 0502 protocol Phase I test results we just looked at
22 in DTX 9002, that Regeneron believed they had announced that --
23 those results at least as early as February 2006?

24 A. So in this 10-K it indicates that we announced
25 positive preliminary results from the ongoing Phase I

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 dose-escalation study, which I understand to be the CLEAR-IT 1
2 study.

3 Q. And you also -- it was also reported that VEGF
4 Trap-Eye was delivered by intravitreal injection into the eye,
5 right?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And Regeneron reported in its 10-K that the patients
8 in your CLEAR-IT 1 study where you coauthored the abstract
9 received a high dose of VEGF Trap-Eye of up to 4 milligrams?

10 A. Right. So the design of the study was to test across
11 a range of doses, those -- some very low and some higher; but
12 yes.

13 Q. And that 4-milligram formulation was dosed as a
14 40 mg/mL formulation?

15 A. So I don't see that as part of this document.

16 Q. Right. But you know that it was?

17 A. The concentration used to dose the 4-milligram dose
18 in these studies was 40 mg/mL.

19 Q. And Regeneron described that dose as well tolerated
20 in its SEC 10-K filing, right?

21 A. We did describe it as well tolerated in this small,
22 early phase study.

23 Q. Right. And that was consistent with what you had
24 seen in that study, right?

25 A. Yes.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Q. And if we take a look at the 51st page of the
2 exhibit, it indicates that this document had been signed off on
3 by your CEO, Len Schleifer, right?

4 A. Yes. I see that it indicates that Len Schleifer had
5 signed this document.

6 Q. Dated February 28th, 2006?

7 A. That's what it appears to be, yes.

8 MS. MAZZOCHI: Your Honor, I'm about to go into a
9 different set of topics. Would this be a good time for our
10 lunch break?

11 THE COURT: It probably is. Why don't we go -- let's
12 take a half hour. Let's pick back up at 12:45.

13 Ms. Chu, ma'am, because you're midstream on your
14 testimony, no one can talk with you about what you've said or
15 anything else. So you'll see folks flee from you in the
16 hallways. They're not being rude or discourteous; they're just
17 following the rules. But I wanted to make sure you understand
18 that.

19 They are permitted to feed you, however, and they are
20 required to feed you. But, otherwise, they can't interact with
21 you. But, ma'am, you can go ahead and step down, and we'll
22 resume with your testimony at 12:45.

23 So we'll see everyone at that point.

24 (A recess was taken from 12:18 p.m. to 12:58 p.m.)

25 THE COURT: Ms. Mazzochi, you may resume.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 MS. MAZZOCHI: Thank you, Your Honor.

2 BY MS. MAZZOCHI:

3 Q. Ms. Chu, Mr. Gregory took you to PTX 188 on your
4 direct examination, which was previously your deposition
5 Exhibit 225, to talk about that meeting referenced --
6 supposedly referenced in the email from April 2nd.

7 If you slide down just a little bit on the exhibit,
8 we'll put it in front of you, Item G, but let's keep all of
9 Item 2 up on the screen.

10 Who decided to put the q8 interval on the table for
11 this meeting?

12 A. I don't recall who specifically put the q8 interval
13 on the table for the meeting.

14 Q. Mr. Gregory also asked you about DTX 227, where you
15 indicated that some type of decision was made, but you don't
16 actually recall this specific meeting, right?

17 A. I don't recall this specific meeting.

18 Q. And you don't recall who actually assembled that
19 particular regimen with 2 milligrams q8 weeks with PIER
20 lead-in, dosed monthly for first three months, as one of the
21 arms to consider for the VIEW 1 Phase III clinical trial,
22 right?

23 A. I don't recall who specifically proposed that first,
24 but the final decision about the study design would have been
25 made by George.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Q. Ms. Chu, unequivocally, you don't recall specifically
2 who proposed that dosing regimen, right?

3 A. I don't recall who first proposed it.

4 Q. Ms. Chu, are you aware that this document, DTX 227,
5 was not identified as a document that Regeneron thought related
6 to conception or reduction to practice for the '572 and '601
7 patent and Regeneron's discovery response?

8 THE COURT: Yes, Counsel?

9 MR. GREGORY: Objection, Your Honor. That's a
10 misrepresentation of our discovery responses.

11 THE COURT: Overruled. You can address it on
12 redirect.

13 Repeat your question, please, Counsel.

14 BY MS. MAZZOCHI:

15 Q. Ms. Chu, are you aware that this document, DTX 227,
16 was not identified as a document relating to conception and
17 reduction to practice for the '572 and '601 patent in
18 Regeneron's discovery responses?

19 A. I'm not an attorney; so I don't think I can
20 adequately answer your question.

21 Q. Do you know if you ever assisted in the preparation
22 of those responses?

23 A. Sorry. Which responses are you referring to?

24 Q. Sure. I'll put it up on the screen for you,
25 DTX 7001. And we've also got some hard copies, I believe, that

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 we can pass out.

2 A. Sorry. Is this in your binder or --

3 Q. No. We're going to hand you a copy if we can.

4 MS. MAZZOCHI: Your Honor, may we approach?

5 THE COURT: You may.

6 MS. MAZZOCHI: Thank you.

7 THE COURT: They're fresh. They're still nice and

8 warm.

9 BY MS. MAZZOCHI:

10 Q. Ms. Chu, do you see this is titled "Regeneron
11 Pharmaceutical Inc.'s Objections and Responses to Defendants'
12 First Set of Interrogatories (1 to 17)" as DTX 7001?

13 A. I see that this document has that title, yes.

14 Q. Okay. And if you can turn to page DTX 7001, exhibit
15 pages 37 to 38.

16 A. Okay.

17 Q. Do you see there's a long list of documents there
18 that have numbers that say RGN-EYLEA-MYLAN and then followed by
19 a more specific number?

20 A. Yes, I see that beginning on page 37 and continuing
21 on page 38.

22 Q. All right. Will you accept my representation that a
23 document ending with the number -- with the Bates Number
24 RGN-EYLEA-MYLAN-00631182 is not found on that list?

25 A. Unless the Court wants me to take the time to review

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 this whole list, I'll accept your representation.

2 THE COURT: And I do not, ma'am. The Court will
3 likewise accept that representation.

4 MS. MAZZOCHI: Thank you.

5 BY MS. MAZZOCHI:

6 Q. You describe this document, DTX 228, as the one where
7 Dr. Yancopoulos conveyed to Bayer the optimal designs for the
8 VIEW 1 and VIEW 2 trials, right?

9 A. I did not. I actually indicated that Dr. Yancopoulos
10 would have spoken with Darlene Jody about the plans.

11 Q. Let's go to your deposition transcript. It's
12 transcript page 287. I believe it's going to be DTX 7272.
13 Here, we've got it up on the screen for you.

14 And were you asked about DTX 228, the April 4th,
15 2007, email from George Yancopoulos to Darlene Jody -- strike
16 that. Let me start over.

17 Were you asked, "Sure. In your capacity as
18 Regeneron's 30(b)(6) witness, what's the significance of this
19 April 4th, 2007, email from George Yancopoulos to Darlene
20 Jody?"

21 And did you give the answer, "So this email from
22 George to Darlene Jody, who is a senior executive responsible
23 for the Bayer collaboration with us, is communicating the
24 Regeneron proposal and decisions around the optimal designs for
25 the VIEW 1 and VIEW 2 trials"?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Is that the testimony you gave?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. Okay. And also at your deposition, this document,
4 DTX 228, the April 4th, 2007, email from George Yancopoulos to
5 Darlene Jody, that document was identified by your legal
6 counsel to prepare you for your deposition, right?

7 A. I don't recall if this specific document was provided
8 to me in preparation for my deposition.

9 Q. That's fine. I know some time has passed. So let's
10 go back to your deposition transcript, then, DTX 7212. This is
11 exhibit page 73.

12 And starting around line 13, were you shown this --
13 were you asked the question, "This is an email dated Wednesday,
14 April 4th, 2007, from George Yancopoulos to Darlene Jody. Do
15 you have that?"

16 "A Yes. So I have Exhibit 228 dated
17 Wednesday, April 4th, 2007, with the subject
18 'Summary of Issues for Call, AMD P3 Planning'
19 from George Yancopoulos to Darlene Jody.

20 "Q Now, earlier in the deposition today
21 you referred to an email that you recalled seeing
22 that you discussed with George Yancopoulos. Was
23 this one of the emails?

24 "A Yes. This was the email I reviewed in
25 preparation for this deposition."

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 Was that the testimony you gave?

2 A. Yes. It appears to be my testimony.

3 Q. Ms. Chu, let's go to PTX 3167, exhibit page 1, that
4 your counsel took you to. And according to the second-to-last
5 sentence in the top paragraph, the sentence that starts out,
6 "Unfortunately," do you see that on the screen?

7 A. Sorry. Can I just -- this is in the original binder,
8 right, not in your binder?

9 Q. Yes. So PTX 3167, exhibit page 1.

10 A. Okay.

11 Q. And while you have DME scenarios the team had put
12 together, you did note that, "Unfortunately, George, Len, and
13 Neil are unavailable today, but we can send them the final
14 recommendations after today's meeting."

15 Is that what's written in the email?

16 A. That's what's written in the email. It's also
17 consistent with our process of having team discussions before
18 presentation and discussion with senior management.

19 Q. But these ideas of using no more than three to six
20 monthly doses, if there was any decision made as to choose one
21 amongst them, that was not generated at that meeting attended
22 by -- it would not have been -- if it was generated at that
23 meeting, it was not one attended by Dr. Yancopoulos, right?

24 A. Again, it was the role of the team to prepare
25 proposals for discussion and decision by senior management.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - CROSS

1 But Dr. Yancopoulos was, according to this email, not in
2 attendance at this meeting.

3 Q. Ms. Chu, I believe you also indicated on your direct
4 examination that you believe George Yancopoulos was responsible
5 for the five-loading-dose regimen. And I believe you pointed
6 to PTX 1028 and PTX 1170, that big, thick exhibit, as support
7 for that.

8 Do you recall that?

9 A. Yes.

10 Q. Do you also recall me asking you at your deposition
11 if your theory that George Yancopoulos made the decision about
12 the five loading doses was documented anywhere?

13 A. I don't recall that specific question.

14 Q. That's fine.

15 Let's pull up DTX 7212, exhibit page 21, which is
16 your deposition transcript pages 80 to 81. And feel free to
17 look at your prior answer just to get the context that we were
18 talking about, five loading doses, but I'd like to focus on the
19 question that starts at line 16.

20 Were you asked the question, "Right. Who decided
21 that the dosing was going to be for the first five injections
22 as opposed to three or four"?

23 "A My recollection is that George
24 Yancopoulos made that decision.

25 "Q Is that documented anywhere?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - REDIRECT

1 "A I don't recall if there is specific
2 documentation of that."

3 Was that the testimony you gave?

4 A. Yes.

5 MS. MAZZOCHI: Your Honor, there's several other
6 places where I believe Ms. Chu testified inconsistently with
7 her prior deposition; but because you heard that yesterday, to
8 move things along, we'll save that for the posttrial findings
9 if that's all right.

10 THE COURT: Understood.

11 MS. MAZZOCHI: Thank you very much, Your Honor.

12 With that, I'll pass the witness.

13 THE COURT: Redirect, Counsel?

14 MR. GREGORY: Briefly, Your Honor.

15 REDIRECT EXAMINATION

16 BY MR. GREGORY:

17 Q. Hello again, Ms. Chu.

18 A. Hi.

19 Q. Defense counsel showed you DTX 7001. I think it was
20 a somewhat lengthy document. It's kind of collected together
21 with a binder clip. Do you have that in front of you?

22 A. Yes, I do.

23 Q. And this is Regeneron Pharmaceutical Inc.'s
24 objections and responses to defendants' first set of
25 interrogatories.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - REDIRECT

1 Do you see that?

2 A. Yes. This document has that title.

3 Q. Now, defense counsel showed you the response to
4 Interrogatory Number 10 set forth on pages 37 and 38.

5 Do you recall that?

6 A. Yes.

7 Q. And do you recall her asking you whether a particular
8 document was within the list of the approximately 50 documents
9 identified on those pages?

10 A. I remember her asking me to agree with her assertion,
11 and I agreed.

12 Q. Defense counsel did not show you the interrogatory
13 itself, did she?

14 A. No.

15 Q. I want to direct your attention to page 36. And that
16 Interrogatory Number 10 at the bottom of page says, "For each
17 claim of each of the initial patents, identify (a) the date
18 that the claimed subject matter was first conceived and the
19 date it was reduced to practice, and the diligence leading to
20 such reduction to practice, and for each such date and
21 diligence, identify with particularity the documentary evidence
22 supporting that date or diligence and at least three persons
23 with any knowledge relating to that date and diligence."

24 Do you see that?

25 A. I see that.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - REDIRECT

1 Q. I read that correctly?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. You can set that aside.

4 Defense counsel asked you some questions about
5 DTX 228.

6 Do you recall those questions?

7 A. Let me just find the exhibit first.

8 Okay. Yes, I have that.

9 Q. Was DTX 228 the only email you reviewed to prepare
10 for your deposition in this case?

11 A. No, it was not. I reviewed several emails in
12 preparation for my deposition.

13 MR. GREGORY: No further questions, Your Honor.

14 THE COURT: Recross?

15 MS. MAZZOCHI: Nope. It's all in the record, Your
16 Honor. Thank you.

17 THE COURT: Ms. Chu, thank you so much. You can step
18 down.

19 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor --

20 THE COURT: Oh, no, no. You may not step down.

21 MR. GREGORY: We have just a few exhibits I think we
22 would move into evidence at this point.

23 THE COURT: Thank you, Counsel. I forgot about that.
24 Go right ahead. Slowly, please.

25 MR. GREGORY: Of course. And I'll ask defense

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - REDIRECT

1 counsel as well to make sure that I'm not reading any that are
2 already in evidence. I think I've done that filtration process
3 myself.

4 We would move PTX 3131, PTX 3133, PTX 3332, PTX 0188,
5 DTX 227, PTX 3150, PTX 3151, PTX 3167, and PTX 3168. We would
6 move those into evidence.

7 I believe additional documents we discussed were
8 DTX 8190, PTX 3188, and PTX 1028C, all of which I believe are
9 already in evidence.

10 THE COURT: Any objection or disagreement with that?

11 MS. MAZZOCHI: I would like to object to PTX 3151.
12 And the reason for that, Your Honor, is because this is the
13 lengthy list of -- they're basically hearsay statements from a
14 DME expert teleconference. So, again, I had no problem with
15 Ms. Chu discussing something that was in her personal
16 knowledge, but because, again, these are proffering supposed
17 expert opinions, I don't want to see them later on as being
18 proffered as this is what the experts thought or something
19 along those lines.

20 THE COURT: What is the purpose of offering 3151?

21 MR. GREGORY: Yes, Your Honor. It's PTX 3151. It's
22 not for the truth of the matter asserted; it's the Regeneron
23 and Ms. Chu's state of mind.

24 THE COURT: Understood. Objection overruled.

25 Any other objections other than 3151?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - REDIRECT

1 MS. MAZZOCHI: I believe that's the only one, Your
2 Honor.

3 THE COURT: All right. Subject to that -- I'm sorry,
4 Counsel.

5 MS. MAZZOCHI: You did not do --

6 MR. GREGORY: I don't believe I showed those to
7 Ms. Chu.

8 MS. MAZZOCHI: Yes. Then we're good, Your Honor.

9 THE COURT: All right. Subject to that ruling on the
10 objection of 3151, each of those identified by counsel are
11 hereby admitted.

12 (PTX 3131, PTX 3133, PTX 3332, PTX 0188, DTX 227,
13 PTX 3150, PTX 3151, PTX 3167, and PTX 3168 were admitted.)

14 THE COURT: Any from the defense?

15 MS. MAZZOCHI: Yes, Your Honor. We have DTX 19,
16 DTX 216, DTX 4957, DTX 5385, DTX 9002, DTX 9005, DTX 9006,
17 DTX 7001, and PTX 3332.

18 I'm sorry, Your Honor. Hang on.

19 I might be -- told I might have gotten one of the
20 9000 numbers wrong.

21 9006, which was the drugs of the future article.

22 THE COURT: Any others, Counsel?

23 MS. MAZZOCHI: Nope. That's it.

24 THE COURT: Any objection to any of those from
25 plaintiff?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KAREN CHU - REDIRECT

1 MR. GREGORY: Your Honor, if you give me just a
2 moment to consult with my cocounsel?

3 THE COURT: Certainly.

4 MR. GREGORY: No objection, Your Honor.

5 THE COURT: Without objection, each of those will be
6 admitted.

7 (DTX 19, DTX 216, DTX 4957, DTX 5385, DTX 9002,
8 DTX 9005, DTX 9006, DTX 7001, and PTX 3332 were admitted.)

9 THE COURT: Anything further we require of this
10 witness, then?

11 MS. MAZZOCHI: Nothing from us, Your Honor.

12 MR. GREGORY: Nor from us, Your Honor. Thank you.

13 THE COURT: I now reextend my invitation to step
14 down, ma'am. Thank you very much. You can leave whatever
15 there. We will tidy up. Thank you.

16 MR. GREGORY: May I approach to remove the binders?

17 THE COURT: You may, yes. It's Ms. Chu's chance to
18 escape.

19 Regeneron may call its next witness.

20 MR. TRASK: Your Honor, Regeneron calls Dr. Kenneth
21 Graham.

22 THE COURT: Dr. Graham, sir, if you wouldn't mind
23 making your way all the way to the front of the courtroom.

24 You're going to pause here with Madam Clerk so she
25 can swear you in, then we'll ask you to take the witness stand

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 over here to your left.

2 **KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD, PLAINTIFF'S WITNESS, SWORN**

3 THE COURT: Anticipating a request to approach and
4 distribute, so granted.

5 MR. TRASK: Thank you, Your Honor.

6 MR. RAKOCZY: William Rakoczy from Mylan and Biocon.
7 I'd like to get an objection on the record before this witness
8 begins, if I may.

9 THE COURT: Why don't we distribute materials, and
10 then when it's a little calmer and quieter, Mr. Rakoczy, the
11 floor will be yours again.

12 Mr. Rakoczy, sir.

13 MR. RAKOCZY: Yes, Your Honor. We object to any
14 testimony or proffered exhibits from this witness on invention
15 date. This goes back to our motion in limine.

16 THE COURT: Good thing I waited for calm and still,
17 Mr. Rakoczy.

18 MR. RAKOCZY: We object to any testimony or proffered
19 exhibits from this witness on invention date. This goes back
20 to our Motion in Limine Number 5, which I believe is in the
21 compilation of documents at Docket Number 449. This also goes
22 back to our interrogatories to Regeneron.

23 Interrogatory Number 10 asks for detailed information
24 on the alleged conception and reduction to practice of the
25 invention. We asked for Regeneron to identify with

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 particularity all documents they would rely on and for
2 knowledgeable witnesses. We received a three-line response to
3 that. They cited no witnesses and cited one page of one
4 document.

5 And for the record, the interrogatory is at DTX 900
6 at page 36, and the response is at DTX 900 and page 37. So
7 this --

8 THE COURT: May I have a copy of that?

9 MR. RAKOCZY: Yes, Judge.

10 THE COURT: I don't believe I have that. If I do, I
11 apologize.

12 Mr. Rakoczy, you said that was Interrogatory
13 Number 10?

14 MR. RAKOCZY: Interrogatory Number 10, which is at
15 the bottom of page 36, and the response on the '865 patent is
16 in the middle of the page on DTX 900 at page 37, where it says
17 "with respect to the '865 patent" and it begins, talks about
18 the inventors conceived, and then it gives a Bates number
19 RGN-EYLEA-MYLAN-00475679. There is no witness identified.
20 There are no documents except, again, one page of one document.

21 Now, two nights ago, Your Honor --

22 THE COURT: What is that document, 475679?

23 MR. RAKOCZY: Your Honor, I believe that is DTX 3580,
24 also PTX 2275. It is a several-page document.

25 The other night I received a list of exhibits that

1 they intended to go through with this witness which is -- I
2 don't know -- a couple feet high, two large binders, a lot more
3 than is cited in that interrogatory answer, and obviously,
4 Dr. Graham is not named in that interrogatory answer at all.

5 And this is exactly what we had feared and why we
6 filed Motion in Limine Number 5. So at the very least, Your
7 Honor, I want to put that objection on the record and also
8 would like to orally renew Motion in Limine Number 5 as well
9 for the very same reasons.

10 THE COURT: Understood.

11 What is Dr. Graham purportedly going to tell us,
12 Counsel?

13 MR. TRASK: Yes, Your Honor. So Dr. Graham is one of
14 the inventors on the '865 patent, and he's here to describe, in
15 large part, the work that he did leading to the inventions
16 described in the '865 patent.

17 This is, obviously, information about which he has
18 personal knowledge, experience himself.

19 THE COURT: He's been disclosed as a witness
20 presumably, correct?

21 MR. TRASK: Absolutely, Your Honor.

22 The point Mr. Rakoczy made about the Interog 10
23 conception date, it's important to remember in context there
24 were other interrogatories that were propounded by Mylan
25 which -- to which Regeneron provided responsive information.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Interrogatory 2 asked for documents regarding the
2 development efforts that led to the present formulation of
3 aflibercept. There's a range of documents disclosed in
4 response to that interrogatory.

5 Interrogatory 7 asks for documents underlying the
6 examples in the patent. There's a long list of documents
7 disclosed at page 27 of this interrogatory response.

8 So these are all -- all of the documents about which
9 Dr. Graham will be testifying today are documents that were
10 disclosed to counsel for Mylan and Biocon from essentially day
11 one of this case. They've been aware that Dr. Graham was an
12 inventor of this patent from day one of this case. They took
13 the deposition of Dr. Graham. They asked him about some of
14 these documents. They didn't ask him about other of these
15 documents. And it is routine in patent cases for inventors to
16 testify on the stand about the work they did leading to their
17 inventions.

18 THE COURT: Yes, Mr. Rakoczy.

19 MR. RAKOCZY: Your Honor, it is not routine to
20 testify about an invention date when you didn't respond to the
21 interrogatory on an invention date and you gave a three-line
22 answer citing one document and not identifying that witness as
23 someone who would testify about invention date. That is a
24 problem, and again, it's not routine.

25 We had no reason to believe Dr. Graham would testify

1 about the invention date or earlier invention date because his
2 interrogatory doesn't identify him, and it certainly doesn't
3 identify all the documents that they've disclosed.

4 MR. TRASK: If I may, Your Honor.

5 THE COURT: Go ahead.

6 MR. TRASK: With respect to the invention date
7 question in particular, so the invention date, of course, is
8 keyed off of defendants' invalidity case. They bear the burden
9 of showing invalidity. And the prior art reference that
10 they've been relying on principally is this Dix reference.
11 That was filed in March -- on March 22, 2006.

12 And so responding to that case, we took the position
13 in this interrogatory response that the invention was conceived
14 no later than March 21, 2006. This is a responsive answer to
15 their asserted prior art.

16 Now, the facts you'll see, if Dr. Graham testifies,
17 are that work was done prior to that date, and he wants to
18 describe the work that he did leading to the invention.

19 But the position we took here was directly responsive
20 to the prior art that they've raised, and so Regeneron had no
21 need to prove up a priority date any earlier than the prior art
22 date on which Mylan and Biocon rely.

23 THE COURT: Understood.

24 Last word, Mr. Rakoczy. Go ahead.

25 MR. RAKOCZY: Your Honor, we could not have asked a

1 clearer or more unambiguous interrogatory: Identify the date
2 of conception and reduction to practice; identify with
3 particularity the documents you will rely on; identify the
4 witnesses with knowledge you will rely on. And they answered
5 with none of that.

6 THE COURT: I agree. I'm going to hold the objection
7 in abeyance at this point given the totality of the
8 interrogatory responses, the fact that Dr. Graham's disclosed
9 as a witness. Defendants obviously had an opportunity to
10 depose him.

11 I do understand and appreciate the concerns,
12 Mr. Rakoczy, you raised with respect to the response provided
13 in Interrogatory Number 10 and the response thereto, but I'm
14 going to hold it in abeyance at this point finding, at least at
15 this point, there's not sufficient prejudice to preclude the
16 doctor from testifying about it. But I would certainly expect
17 and encourage that to be addressed in posttrial submissions at
18 this point with the distinctive prospect the Court not
19 accepting any of that testimony for the reasons you've
20 articulated.

21 MR. RAKOCZY: Thank you, Judge. And would Your Honor
22 prefer if I objected to each and every document?

23 THE COURT: As a matter of fact, I would not, sir.
24 I'll -- the subject area is noted and, I think, defined by our
25 conversation here, and we are certainly aware of it and mindful

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 of it, addressing it in posttrial proceedings.

2 MR. RAKOCZY: Thank you, Judge. I just want to make
3 sure the objection is preserved. And I'll just assume I have a
4 continuing objection to all of these exhibits.

5 THE COURT: No, I understood. And I will
6 certainly -- that certainly works for me.

7 MR. RAKOCZY: Thank you, Your Honor.

8 MR. TRASK: Thank you, Your Honor.

9 THE COURT: Thank you, Counsel. You may proceed.

10 MR. TRASK: Thank you.

11 May I proceed, Your Honor?

12 THE COURT: You may.

13 MR. TRASK: Thank you.

14 DIRECT EXAMINATION

15 BY MR. TRASK:

16 Q. Dr. Graham, how are you?

17 A. I'm all right. How are you doing?

18 Q. Fine. Thank you.

19 Would you please introduce yourself to the Court.

20 A. My name is Kenneth Graham. Right now I live in
21 Pleasant Valley, New York. I've been an employee of Regeneron
22 Pharmaceuticals for 22 years and some months at this point in
23 time.

24 Q. What is your role at Regeneron, Dr. Graham?

25 A. So now I am a senior director in charge of one of the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 teams in formulation development; so we manage a suite of
2 products.

3 Q. And where are you from originally?

4 A. Well, I was born smack dab in the middle of
5 Pennsylvania in a little town called Bellefonte.

6 Q. Where did you do your undergraduate degree?

7 A. Actually, right down the road at Penn State
8 University, State College, Pennsylvania.

9 Q. What was your major?

10 A. Animal bioscience.

11 Q. And why did you study animal bioscience?

12 A. Well, my family has a farm in Schuylkill County. So
13 I grew up with animals and kind of was looking to be a large
14 animal veterinarian, and I read the James Herriot books and was
15 thinking I want to be a veterinarian and go that route.

16 Q. Did you continue there for a master's degree?

17 A. I did.

18 Q. What was your focus?

19 A. So my focus was actually -- the master's degree was
20 in veterinary science. What I was studying was a number of
21 diseases related to selenium and vitamin D. There's a disease
22 in sheep called white muscle disease, and when lambs are
23 deficient in selenium, they basically lose their ability to
24 walk, become paralyzed.

25 Q. After getting your master's degree at Penn State, did

1 you go on to do a PhD?

2 A. I did.

3 Q. Where was that?

4 A. That's at the California Institute of Technology,
5 Caltech.

6 Q. What was your PhD thesis in?

7 A. So I was studying the way in which a specific class
8 of proteins bind DNA. So my thesis had a couple of parts. One
9 was what aspects of the protein molecule determine which
10 sequence in the DNA will bind. Another aspect was developing
11 what I refer to as a synthetic enzyme. So I was able to take a
12 part of a human serum albumin binding -- human serum albumin copper
13 binding domain and attach it to this protein that binds the
14 DNA, gamma-delta resolvase. It's the binding agent from that.
15 And then in the presence of nickel and an oxidizing agent, site
16 specifically cut the DNA in much the same way a restriction
17 enzyme does. And I also characterized that reaction doing some
18 kinetic isotope effects studies as well.

19 Q. And did you graduate with your PhD?

20 A. I did.

21 Q. And what did you do after you graduated?

22 A. So immediately after I graduated from my doctoral
23 degree, I went to work at a place called the Beckman Research
24 Institute - City of Hope. It's a private cancer institute that
25 was in Duarte, California, that has a research institute that's

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 endowed by Beckman Institute. It's an arm of Beckman.

2 Q. How long did you remain at the Beckman Research
3 Institute?

4 A. About ten years.

5 Q. Where did you go after that?

6 A. After that I joined Regeneron.

7 Q. What was your first role at Regeneron, Dr. Graham?

8 A. So I was hired in to manage or supervise the
9 bioanalytical testing lab that was part of our pilot
10 manufacturing facility in Tarrytown, New York.

11 Q. And what was the first product you worked on at
12 Regeneron?

13 A. So the first product I worked on was something we
14 referred to as IL-1 Trap. It's now marketed as a compound
15 called Arcalyst.

16 Q. And what is that product used for?

17 A. So Arcalyst is a IL-1 inhibitor. It is used to treat
18 a disease called FCAS. It is basically an ultra-orphan or
19 orphan indication. There's maybe a thousand people in the
20 world that have this disease. And it works out to be an
21 allergy to the cold.

22 So people that have this disease, if they would walk
23 into an air-conditioned room like this courthouse, mild form,
24 they break out in hives; more severe, they break out in hives,
25 have joint pain; most severe, you know, they start having their

1 hands and knees get twisted like you do with rheumatoid
2 arthritis. Quite a horrible, actually, disease.

3 I actually met a woman -- I don't know whether I can
4 call it fortunate or not, but my wife and I were waiting to go
5 see a movie, and we were talking and she made some comment
6 about Regeneron. And the woman a couple people behind us said,
7 "Oh, you work for Regeneron." And I said yes. And she
8 proceeded to tell me her story.

9 And she had the disease, both her kids had the
10 disease. And the way she described it, she said, "Prior to
11 your drug, I didn't have a life." Literally, that was her
12 quote. And, basically, she couldn't go out in the summer and
13 go into a theater or anyplace, had problems going outside in
14 the winter just because of the response to the cold.

15 Q. When did you first work on aflibercept, what is now
16 known as the active ingredient in Eylea?

17 A. So at the end of my first year at Regeneron in 2002,
18 the pilot manufacturing facility changed over from IL-1 track,
19 and we set up to work on our new molecule which we were calling
20 VEGF Trap at the time.

21 Q. And what was your contribution at that time to the
22 aflibercept project?

23 A. So in the bioanalytical lab we do in-process testing
24 of the product as it goes through the purification steps. We
25 also monitor some aspects of the product during bioreactor

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 production.

2 So I set up methods that would be able to follow the
3 product through the purification strain and to ensure the
4 ultimate material that we got out of the bioreactor was of
5 suitable quality.

6 Q. And can you explain, Dr. Graham, how the aflibercept
7 material that you worked on was being purified within your
8 facility was first made?

9 A. Well -- so when you make a protein with CHO cells,
10 Chinese hamster ovary cells, in some ways -- this is going to
11 sound a little weird -- but it's like brewing beer. So you
12 have a big stainless steel vat. You put a bunch of things in
13 that the protein or the yeast -- or the cells or the yeast need
14 to grow.

15 You grow it up for a period of time. And when it's
16 ready, you take the material out of the vat. And in the case
17 of the aflibercept molecules, the cells are expressing the
18 protein into the solution. And you have a solution of
19 aflibercept, just like you have beer with a bunch of cells
20 floating in it like a cloudy IPA.

21 Then you take this through a series of purification
22 steps, and you remove the cell debris. You remove all the
23 unwanted stuff. And you end up with something that's a clear
24 solution and probably looks like more Coors Light.

25 THE COURT: Finally, something I understand. Thank

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 you, Doctor.

2 MR. TRASK: Happy hour.

3 BY MR. TRASK:

4 Q. So just to be clear, the aflibercept that you were
5 saying is made by these cells, is it in solution from the very
6 beginning?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Okay. When you were doing this work on the
9 purification of aflibercept, were you in the formulation
10 development group at the time?

11 A. No. I was in pilot manufacturing.

12 Q. Did you join the formulation development group at
13 some point after that?

14 A. I did. In 2005 Regeneron was having some financial
15 problems. We started off by eliminating redundant functions,
16 one of which was the pilot manufacturing facility. And
17 ultimately they laid off more people beyond that. But I was
18 fortunate enough to be able to transfer into preclinical
19 development and formulation development at that time.

20 Q. And after joining the formulation development group,
21 when did you start working on formulations of aflibercept?

22 A. Probably within the first two, three months, tops.

23 Q. And what was your first project on aflibercept when
24 joining the formulation and development group at Regeneron?

25 A. So we had a formulation that was being tested for

1 ophthalmic purposes. And that formulation in our formal
2 stability group, which is where our QC group monitors the GNP
3 product that is used for people, they started seeing particles
4 in the formulation.

5 And this is kind of a very serious thing. So I was
6 tasked with what -- why are we seeing these particles? What's
7 going on here? You know, this became an all-hands-on effort,
8 and everybody in the group focused in on this.

9 Q. Who were you reporting to at the time in the
10 formulation development group?

11 A. Dan Dix.

12 Q. And who did Dan report to?

13 A. Eric Furfine.

14 Q. Okay. And did you also work with someone named Kelly
15 Frye?

16 A. Yes. She was one of my colleagues.

17 Q. Are those the four people, including yourself, who
18 are named as inventors on the '865 patent?

19 A. They are.

20 Q. When you joined the formulation development group,
21 did you become aware of work that was previously done as part
22 of that group on formulating aflibercept?

23 A. So when I joined the group, there were several years
24 of research that had been conducted prior to arriving there. I
25 wanted to -- wanted to -- needed to go back, look at what was

1 done so I could understand the types of things that had been
2 tested, what the results were. So I went through and reviewed
3 the previous stability studies and things that we had conducted
4 and in formulation development.

5 Q. Were all of the prior aflibercept formulations
6 intravitreal formulations?

7 A. No.

8 Q. What were some of the others used for?

9 A. So aflibercept was originally developed to treat
10 cancer. So it was -- the idea was it would stop tumors from
11 growing. So we had looked at IV, maybe some subcu routes, but
12 the predominant work was focused on IV.

13 Q. And when you were tasked with developing an
14 intravitreal formulation of aflibercept, did you consider using
15 the prior formulation for cancer for that purpose?

16 A. No. So the cancer formulation was designed to be a
17 concentrate that you would put into an IV bag, dilute out, and
18 give to a patient through an IV. So it had a really high
19 osmolality, like 1100, 1160 milliosmoles. It had a lot of
20 sucrose in it, 20 percent sucrose. And there was concerns that
21 sucrose can be toxic to the eye. Different buffer system.

22 Q. Now, when was it that you first attempted to develop
23 an improved intravitreal formulation of aflibercept?

24 A. Well, the improved version came after our first
25 version started to fail. And this was -- I'm sorry. I was

1 going to say oh, crap, you know, now what do we do? because
2 everything is falling apart.

3 And it was pretty much, all right, we have to have
4 this trial -- these clinical trials to keep running. We have
5 to be able to dose the patients. What do we do?

6 So we started looking at the cause of what was
7 happening with the first formulation. We figured out -- or I
8 figured out that exposure to the shear stress going through the
9 tiny needle that's used for intravitreal injections was likely
10 causing the particles to form. And we began working on that,
11 really, mid of 2005, May time frame, I would say.

12 Q. Now, when you set out to develop an improved
13 intravitreal formulation of aflibercept, did you have any
14 objectives in mind relating to the stability of the
15 formulation?

16 A. So we wanted to ensure that the product had a minimum
17 two-year shelf life. We were looking to make the most stable
18 product possible; so we were concerned about having very pure
19 aflibercept to start with. That was a focus in the pilot
20 manufacturing, and then we wanted to sustain that.

21 Q. Did you have any objectives in mind regarding the
22 concentration of aflibercept in the intravitreal formulation?

23 A. So the desire was to have a -- I'm going to use the
24 words "high-concentration formulation." And we tested a range
25 of concentrations, but we didn't have a specific one in mind at

1 that point.

2 Q. Were the objectives of having a formulation that
3 was -- had high stability and a high concentration, were those
4 compatible or in contention with one another?

5 A. Well, to put it simply, they're like opposites. So
6 if you have a lower concentration formulation, they tend to be
7 more stable. As you make the concentration higher, the
8 stability goes down. And this is because, at least with
9 aflibercept, the primary degradation pathway is molecules
10 coming together.

11 So it's just -- the more concentrated, the more
12 molecules, the greater the chance that they'll come together
13 and aggregate. You know, if you want to put it in an equation,
14 it goes up as the square of the concentration. So, you know,
15 you double the concentration, you go from 10 to 20, it's the
16 difference between a rate of 100 and a rate of 400 if I can
17 still do math.

18 Q. Why was it that you were aiming to develop a
19 formulation with a high concentration of aflibercept?

20 A. So this is for an injection into the eye. Based on
21 my experience when my mother was treated for AMD, an injection
22 into the eye is really traumatic. You know, even if you go
23 once a month, it takes a couple days out of the person's life.
24 There's a lot of risk associated with it. A lot of bad things
25 can happen. And we wanted to be able to have as long an

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 efficacious range as possible.

2 Q. Now, if the goal was to get more drug into the
3 patient's eye, why couldn't we just use a lower concentration
4 formulation and inject more of it?

5 A. Well, the eye is a closed thing. It's kind of
6 like -- I don't know -- a ping-pong ball. You just have that
7 much volume in there. And when you go to inject it, you run
8 the risk of increasing the pressure. So you can't put a lot of
9 volume in it.

10 Based on what I understand to be the limits, you
11 know, you certainly don't want to inject more than 100
12 microliters. You know, 50 microliters is considered to be an
13 optimal injection.

14 MR. RAKOCZY: Objection, Your Honor. This witness
15 has not been qualified as an expert in ophthalmology or
16 intravitreal injections.

17 THE COURT: Understood. Sustained.

18 But you can continue. I recognize it's background
19 information.

20 MR. TRASK: Thank you, Your Honor.

21 BY MR. TRASK:

22 Q. So about -- can you just give the Court a sense for
23 how much is the volume that we're talking about here in these
24 formulations that would be injected.

25 A. So I don't know if you've ever played with the

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 old-school glass eyedroppers in, like, elementary school or
2 high school chemistry. It's like one or two drops from one of
3 them.

4 Q. And did the fact that the formulation you were
5 developing would be injected intravitreally pose any challenges
6 to you from a formulation standpoint?

7 A. Okay. Yes. It did.

8 Q. What was that?

9 A. So we knew we had limited volume. We knew that it
10 was going to have to go through a very small needle. You know,
11 the small needle causes what's called shear stress or shear on
12 the drug. And that can be destabilizing to the drug. It can
13 cause the drug to, in the case of aflibercept, precipitate.

14 Q. What was the gauge of the needle that you understood
15 these formulations would be injected through?

16 A. 30-gauge.

17 Q. Did you bring demonstratives with you today to
18 illustrate these needles?

19 A. Yeah. We have a couple examples.

20 MR. TRASK: May I approach with those, Your Honor?

21 THE COURT: You may.

22 MR. TRASK: I'm going to hand up what has been marked
23 for identification as PDX 7.001. This is the 30-gauge needle.
24 And PDX 7.002, this is the 22-gauge needle. I'm going to be
25 very careful with these.

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 THE COURT: I was going to say marshal services isn't
2 in here. Usually you don't get this close with a sharp object.

3 THE WITNESS: Well, it would take a lot of effort for
4 me to do any appreciable damage.

5 THE COURT: I'm pretty soft. I'd probably crumble
6 pretty quick.

7 THE WITNESS: I don't know. You don't look that soft
8 to me.

9 BY MR. TRASK:

10 Q. Dr. Graham, where did these demonstratives come from?

11 A. Actually, they came out of my lab.

12 Q. And can you explain to the Court what these are.

13 A. All right. So I grabbed the one that was labeled 02
14 out of the baggie. So this is a 22-gauge needle. So this is
15 the typical needle that is used -- or a typical gauge that this
16 is used to do an IV infusion is 22.

17 The other one -- I probably should have pulled both
18 of these out first so I don't stab anybody -- is a 30-gauge.
19 And the 30-gauge is what's typically used to inject somebody in
20 the eye. I don't know if you want to take a look at these.

21 THE COURT: I might as well.

22 MR. TRASK: For the record, there's nothing but water
23 in those needles, Your Honor.

24 THE WITNESS: Please don't stick yourself.

25 THE COURT: I promise I will not.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 All right. Thank you so much, Doctor. I'm going to
2 hand those back to you. Thank you, sir.

3 BY MR. TRASK:

4 Q. I'll let you put the caps back on those so we don't
5 have any inadvertent accidents.

6 A. That would be a good thing.

7 Q. And why was the size of the needle through which the
8 formulation would be injected relevant to your work as a
9 formulator, Dr. Graham?

10 A. All right. So I think I said that you encounter
11 something called shear when you go through the needle. What
12 shear is, it's basically like you run down a three-lane highway
13 and you slam into one lane. So everything kind of comes
14 together and bounces up on the walls as well. So the narrower
15 the needle gauge, the greater the amount of shear.

16 Q. Let's take a look at PTX 3327.

17 What is this document, Dr. Graham?

18 A. This is a presentation that I prepared some years
19 ago.

20 Q. Okay. And this document itself isn't dated. But if
21 we can take a quick look at PTX 3326, what is this document?

22 A. It's an email that I sent to Eric Furfine back in
23 April of 2006.

24 Q. And what is the first attachment indicated on this
25 email that you sent?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. KSG PCD talk, March of 2006.

2 Q. Okay. And which presentation is that?

3 A. The previous document you had up on the screen.

4 Q. Let's then turn back to 3327.

5 You said you yourself prepared this slide deck as
6 part of your work on --

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. -- Eylea -- rather, aflibercept intravitreal
9 injections?

10 A. I did.

11 Q. Let's look at page 44 of this document.

12 Did you prepare this slide, Dr. Graham?

13 A. I did.

14 Q. What does this slide show?

15 A. So what I did is I went back and did some
16 calculations to estimate the shear rate that the formulation
17 would experience when it went through different needle sizes.

18 Q. And if we look at the row labeled "One Second" under
19 "Time to Inject," what did the data show that you calculated
20 for a 22-gauge needle and a 30-gauge needle?

21 A. So for the 22-gauge needle, you've got about 16,000
22 reciprocal centimeters' worth of shear -- or not reciprocal
23 centimeters, reciprocal seconds. So shear is like a frequency.
24 It's seconds to the minus 1.

25 And then when you narrowed that needle gauge -- so

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 you went down to the 30-gauge -- if you're going at the same
2 rate, that number jumps up to 370,000, about 20, 22 times more.

3 Q. So when comparing the amount of shear experienced by
4 a formulation through a 22-gauge needle versus the amount of
5 shear experienced when passing through a 30-gauge needle, about
6 how much higher is the shear with the 30-gauge needle used for
7 intravitreal injection?

8 A. Massively. I think I said 22 times, but it's a huge
9 difference.

10 Q. And how does that compare to the shear that's
11 experienced by the formulation during normal manufacturing
12 processes?

13 A. So one of the most shear-intensive or stressful parts
14 of the manufacturing process is when you take the formulation
15 through a diafiltration step. At that point you're pushing the
16 formulation up against a membrane with a great deal of force.
17 And that's only about 3,000 reciprocal seconds.

18 Q. So if a formulation is being manufactured and then
19 administered through a 30-gauge needle, what's the point in
20 time at which the formulation experiences the highest shear
21 rate?

22 A. Going through the 30-gauge needle.

23 Q. Now, can changes to the formulation lead to higher
24 shear stress?

25 A. Yes, they can.

1 Q. How so?

2 A. So as the formulation protein concentration goes up,
3 the solutions become a little bit more viscous and you increase
4 the viscosity. That will increase the shear stress.

5 Q. What is viscosity, Dr. Graham?

6 A. All right. So this is -- the definition is the
7 resistance of a solution to flow. What that means --

8 THE COURT: To what, Doctor? I'm sorry.

9 THE WITNESS: To flow.

10 So what it means is if you take, like, a bottle of
11 water, you go to pour it. Water is 1 centipoise. It starts
12 immediately. You stop; it stops immediately. Take honey, go
13 to pour it, it takes a little while for the honey to start
14 going. Go to stop it, it takes a little while for the honey to
15 stop. Low viscosity/high viscosity.

16 BY MR. TRASK:

17 Q. Why is shear an issue when it comes to the handling
18 of formulations?

19 A. In the case of aflibercept, work that I did
20 identified that shear stress or shear caused the formulation to
21 form particles.

22 Q. And what's the process by which particles are formed?

23 A. So this is one of those things that it's kind of like
24 a spectrum of what you deal with. You have the individual
25 molecules in solution. You know, sometimes a couple slam

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 together. Sometimes a couple more slam together. When you get
2 to the point you get enough of them stuck together, it falls
3 out of solution and you get a visible particle.

4 Q. Is this related to the concept of aggregation?

5 A. It is.

6 Q. And so what happens when proteins aggregate?

7 A. So if I'm talking about aflibercept, aflibercept
8 exists as what we call a native dimer. It's two of the same
9 protein strands that are hooked together. So if you take two
10 of those native dimers and they come together, that starts to
11 form aggregates or high molecular weight species.

12 Usually what happens first is you'll get to maybe
13 four or eight of these things come together. They stay in
14 solution. And then if it gets bigger, you know, you'll start
15 getting some of these things that show up as turbidity. So if
16 you look at smoke, smoke is particles. Do you see individual
17 smoke particles? No. You see the mass of them, but you can't
18 see one. So turbidity is the whole bunch of these little
19 things that are coming out now that you can't see individually
20 but you see as a group.

21 And then the next step -- or the next step can be
22 these things come together. And then it falls out of solution
23 and becomes something that you can see by your naked eye.

24 Q. From your perspective as a formulator, was the
25 formation of particles in an intravitreal formulation a bad

1 thing?

2 A. It was an exceptionally bad thing. It's bad in any
3 formulation; but for the eye, it's very bad.

4 Q. Can you explain why that is.

5 A. So I think the eye being a closed system, whatever
6 you put in tends to stay in. You know, one aspect is there's a
7 drain in the back of the eye called the trabecular network.
8 And these particles have a chance to, if they move into that
9 area, plug the drain.

10 What happens when you plug the drain in the back of
11 the eye is you raise the pressure. And this is what happens in
12 glaucoma. So you can cause blindness.

13 MR. RAKOCZY: Objection, Your Honor. Again, the
14 witness has not been qualified as an expert in this area.

15 THE COURT: Understood. Sustained. The Court will
16 disregard that testimony.

17 Next question, Counsel.

18 BY MR. TRASK:

19 Q. I think you touched on this a moment ago, but was the
20 possibility of particle formation in an aflibercept formulation
21 just a theoretical concern to you?

22 A. No.

23 Q. Why not?

24 A. So we had gotten -- I don't know -- a year, year and
25 a half in to a clinical trial. And all of a sudden our

1 clinical supplies were falling out of solution, forming
2 particles.

3 Q. If particles are forming in a formulation, what does
4 that mean about the formulation's stability?

5 A. That's bad.

6 Q. Now, you mentioned that there was a prior oncology
7 formulation for cancer.

8 A. Yes.

9 Q. What was the concentration in that formulation?

10 A. It was 25 mg/mL.

11 Q. Okay. So if Regeneron had already developed a stable
12 25 mg/mL aflibercept formulation, weren't you sure that you
13 could make a stable 40 mg/mL formulation as well?

14 A. No.

15 Q. Why not?

16 A. So increasing concentration leads to decreasing
17 stability. The challenges with aggregation or particle
18 formation, however you want to describe it, go up as the square
19 of the concentration.

20 Q. And when you set out to develop a 40 mg/mL
21 aflibercept formulation for intravitreal use, were you
22 reasonably sure that you could achieve such a formulation with
23 acceptable chemical and physical stability?

24 A. Certainly not when I'm sitting there staring at vials
25 of IVT1 with particles in it.

1 Q. I'd like to now switch gears just a bit to some of
2 the analytical techniques that you used in your laboratory to
3 assess the stability of the formulations you were working on.

4 So first if we could take a look at the '865 patent.
5 This is PTX 2.

6 Is this your '865 patent, Dr. Graham?

7 A. Yes, it is.

8 Q. And you're the Kenneth Graham named on the face of
9 it?

10 A. I am.

11 Q. Let's look at Table 3 of this patent. What's shown
12 in Table 3?

13 A. So this is data from a stability study. The study is
14 VGFT-SS207.

15 Q. Okay. And I'd like to ask you about the headings of
16 the different rows here. Are these -- do these reflect
17 different analytical data on the formulation?

18 A. They do.

19 Q. Let's cover each of these just briefly. What is the
20 visual appearance analysis that was done here?

21 A. So visual appearance is simply how does the
22 formulation look in its container. You're looking to see if
23 you've got particles in it. Has it discolored? You know, what
24 does it look like?

25 Q. You mentioned turbidity a moment ago. Can you just

1 briefly remind us about turbidity analysis.

2 A. All right. So turbidity, we use a machine to measure
3 that. And what we do is we look for a decrease in the amount
4 of light that goes through the sample. As the amount of light
5 drops, the signal goes up. You'll see we're at 00 here. This
6 is a -- not an absolute measure; this is corrected for the
7 first time we make the formulation. So we make it, we test it
8 immediately. And then after time we look at it again and see
9 if it's changing. So we subtract that zero value from the
10 value at the month where we measure it again.

11 Q. What is the pH analysis reported here?

12 A. It tells you the alkalinity or acidity of the
13 formulation. We look for no change.

14 Q. And the last two columns, percent VEGF Trap recovered
15 and percent VEGF Trap native configuration, what analytical
16 technique is used for those measurements?

17 A. Size-exclusion chromatography.

18 Q. Okay. And what does size-exclusion chromatography
19 measure?

20 A. So it's a sieving method, basically. So you have a
21 column. And it separates things -- the material in the column
22 separates things based on their size. Big stuff comes out
23 first, intermediate stuff kind of hangs around for a while, and
24 the small stuff comes out last.

25 Q. Now, over the course of your career at Regeneron,

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 roughly how many size-exclusion chromatography analyses have
2 you run on aflibercept?

3 A. I don't know. 100,000. Tens of thousands. More
4 than I can count.

5 Q. And what does SEC tell you -- if I use SEC to refer
6 to size-exclusion chromatography, you'll understand that?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. What does that technique tell you?

9 A. So SEC gives you an indication of the molecule in its
10 native state. So it tells you what percentage of the molecules
11 in that solution are hanging out as they're individuals. It
12 also tells you when the molecules start coming together and
13 have -- and form the soluble aggregates that I described
14 earlier.

15 Q. And now beyond the ones that we've just discussed
16 here from the example in the patent, did Regeneron use other
17 techniques for analyzing the formation of insoluble
18 particulates in formulations?

19 A. Yes, we did.

20 Q. Why did you need so many different analytical
21 techniques to understand aggregation and particle formation in
22 formulations?

23 A. Well, first off, they cover a range of sizes. So you
24 have techniques that are dialed in for each size of particle.

25 Secondly, the formation of particles in a formulation

1 is very bad. You know, we talk about the stability of the
2 formulation. The problem is with these particles or
3 aggregates, it can cause the drug to become either inactive or
4 worse. In some cases it can lead to, you know, autoimmune
5 responses or immune responses to the drug.

6 MR. RAKOCZY: Objection, Your Honor. Again, he's not
7 qualified as an expert in that area.

8 THE COURT: Understood. Sustained. I'll disregard
9 that last portion of the testimony.

10 BY MR. TRASK:

11 Q. Let me just ask, Doctor, in the course of your duties
12 at Regeneron, do you meet with ophthalmologists to understand
13 their concerns regarding aflibercept formulations?

14 A. Yes, I have.

15 Q. And do you take into account the information you
16 learn from ophthalmologists in designing the formulations that
17 you've done as part of your invention and on other molecules as
18 well?

19 A. Yes, absolutely.

20 Q. Do you analyze particle formation using a technique
21 called HIAC, H-I-A-C?

22 A. We did, yes.

23 Q. Let's return to Exhibit 3327. And I'd like to look
24 at page 34 of this document now.

25 What is this page of the presentation, Doctor?

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. So this is a -- kind of a section divider. So I was
2 talking about one topic and then I switched over to talk about
3 HIAC.

4 Q. Okay. And did you prepare this section of the
5 presentation as well?

6 A. Yes, I did.

7 Q. At the time you prepared these slides, who was the
8 in-house specialist in Regeneron's formulation development
9 group on the HIAC analysis?

10 A. That would be me.

11 Q. And did you actually perform the HIAC analysis in
12 this section of the slide deck?

13 A. Yes.

14 Q. Let's take a look at page 46 of the same exhibit,
15 3327. What's shown on this slide, Doctor?

16 A. So this is a summary table taking account the impact
17 of needle shear on a number of different protein formulations
18 and --

19 Q. And what -- I'm sorry.

20 A. Go ahead.

21 Q. What's shown -- the first row of the table is
22 highlighted in blue. What does that show?

23 A. So the one that's highlighted in blue is the clinical
24 oncology formulation that we had at the time. You'll note
25 there's a note on the backside of it that says 22-gauge needle.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 So what we did is we took the oncology formulation,
2 pushed it through the 22-gauge needle four times, and looked to
3 see how many particles we had when we began and after we did
4 it. And we showed that there were really no difference. You
5 know, it only went up a small amount.

6 Q. And what about the fourth line down that's
7 highlighted in red? What does that convey?

8 A. So the IVT1 formulation that we were looking at that
9 was forming particles, this is that formulation four times
10 through a 30-gauge needle. So in that case we got about a
11 tenfold increase in particles.

12 Q. And what about all of the rows below the fourth row
13 labeled "Formulations" numbered 2 through Number 9. What is
14 the information conveyed there?

15 A. So those are a series of different formulations that
16 we made seeking to come up with an improved ITV formulation.
17 What that data shows is our improved versions were all better
18 than the original. Some of them are better than each other.
19 But said that yes, we had demonstrated something that works
20 better.

21 Q. And let's turn to page 60 of this slide deck.

22 Are these some of the conclusions you drew from the
23 data we just looked at?

24 A. Yes.

25 Q. Can you explain what's conveyed in the first bullet

1 point.

2 A. Well, the first one's pretty straightforward. The
3 small 30-gauge needle caused more shear than the bigger needle
4 and more particles.

5 Q. What about the third bullet point highlighted on the
6 screen?

7 A. So what that is is we had the improved IVT
8 formulations, those 9s that you were talking about. And
9 basically it showed that, compared to our original formulation,
10 we were at least three times better with the worst ones that we
11 were dealing with.

12 Q. And the fourth bullet point?

13 A. So it said that when we added polysorbate, we had
14 more resistance than when we added PEG.

15 Q. Okay.

16 We can take that down, please.

17 I'd now like to look at your '865 patent, again,
18 PTX 2.

19 Can we look at the provisional application date on
20 the face of the patent.

21 Doctor, what was the filing date of the provisional
22 application for your '865 patent?

23 A. June 16th, 2006.

24 Q. And were you involved in the preparation of that
25 provisional application?

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes, I was.

2 Q. What was your involvement?

3 A. So I supplied data and data tables to the attorney
4 who drafted the document.

5 Q. Were those the same data tables that appear in the
6 '865 patent itself?

7 A. The data is the same that appears in the patent, yes.

8 Q. And did you also review the provisional application
9 before it was filed on June 16th, 2006?

10 A. Yes, I did.

11 Q. And you're familiar with the contents of that
12 provisional application?

13 A. Yes, I am.

14 Q. All right. I'd like to ask you about some of the
15 internal work you did at Regeneron leading and relating to your
16 invention.

17 So first let's take a look at PTX 2293.

18 What is this document, Dr. Graham?

19 A. It's one of Regeneron's laboratory notebooks. It
20 looks like it belonged to Kelly Frye.

21 Q. And remind us. Who's Kelly Frye?

22 A. So she was one you of my colleagues. She worked in
23 the lab alongside of me.

24 Q. Does she have a PhD as well?

25 A. She does.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. And she's your coinventor on the '865 patent?

2 A. Yes, she is.

3 Q. Did you review this lab notebook, PTX 2293, as part
4 of your role in Regeneron's formulation development group?

5 A. Yes, I did.

6 Q. You're familiar with its contents?

7 A. Yes.

8 Q. Let's turn to page 58 of this document. What's shown
9 on this page of the laboratory notebook?

10 A. So this is a protocol for a stability study. This is
11 Protocol Number 195.

12 Q. What is a stability study, Dr. Graham?

13 A. So a stability study is a collection of tests and
14 formulations or formulations containers and tests that we
15 assemble and conduct to look at the stability of a formulation.
16 The protocol's kind of like a contract in that it tells you
17 what you're going to test, what tests you're going to do, and
18 when you're going to do them.

19 Q. And what other types of documentation would be
20 associated with a stability study?

21 A. So typically we create what's called a pull schedule.
22 And the pull schedule outlines when we're going to do specific
23 thermal tests. So thermal tests basically put the formulation
24 in a refrigerator or a freezer, an oven. And, you know, you
25 say I'm going to come back three days, one month, six months,

1 and check how it is.

2 Q. So if we look at the second paragraph shown on this
3 page of the exhibit, can you make out what's written there
4 highlighted in yellow?

5 A. It's getting to be a stretch; but yes, it says,
6 "There is a problem with the physical stability of VEGF Trap in
7 the current IVT formulation above 10 mg/mL, VEGF Trap.
8 Specifically, particulate is seen after high-concentration
9 formulations are pulled into a syringe and ejected into vials
10 or into a vial. Therefore, a more stable ITV formulation is
11 essential."

12 Q. Does this help explain why your group was researching
13 more stable intravitreal formulations of aflibercept?

14 A. Yes.

15 Q. What are the types of stress conditions that were
16 used in the stability studies your group ran?

17 A. It was dependent on the study. But, typically, we
18 would look at agitation stress. Agitation stress is you take
19 the container of the formulation and you put it on a lab scale
20 vortexer, which is like a paint shaker. And it just shakes it
21 up.

22 We would do thermal stress. So we would look at it
23 at a range of temperatures. Sometimes we would just use
24 accelerate and stress temperatures like 25, 37, and 45 to kind
25 of get an early read on what's going on.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 We'd also do freeze/thaw, is another one that we
2 would use.

3 Q. Let's take a look at the formulations that you tested
4 in this SS195 stability study. This is under the heading
5 "Procedure" on page 58 of PTX 2293.

6 Doctor, how many different formulations did you test
7 in this study?

8 A. There were five.

9 Q. And can you make out what is the makeup of the
10 Formulation Number 2 in the study?

11 A. Okay. So what we would do is we had a base
12 formulation which was common to all the formulations that are
13 being tested in the study. That's in the little snippet out
14 above. And that says that we used 10 millimolar
15 phosphate, .03 percent polysorbate 20, 40 mg/mL of VEGF Trap,
16 and the pH was 6.25.

17 In addition, that formulation also contained
18 40-millimolar sodium chloride and 5 percent sucrose.

19 Q. And does that Formulation Number 2 stand out to you
20 today, Dr. Graham?

21 A. It does.

22 Q. Why is that?

23 A. It's what ultimately became the commercial Eylea
24 formulation.

25 Q. And does this laboratory notebook also indicate when

1 that formulation was first made?

2 A. Yes, it does.

3 Q. Let's turn to page 60 of PTX 2293.

4 What's shown here, Dr. Graham?

5 A. So this is the compounding record; so the mixing of
6 the formulation. And it's for Formulation Number 2 with a
7 specific lot number. And it was conducted on September 30th of
8 2005.

9 Q. To your knowledge, is this the very first time that
10 the formulation was made that is known today as the Eylea
11 formulation?

12 A. I believe it is, yes.

13 Q. And who made this formulation?

14 A. This was done by Kelly.

15 Q. Okay. And what was the date?

16 A. September 30th, 2005.

17 Q. Did your group test the stability of this formulation
18 that was run as part of Stability Study SS195?

19 A. Yes, we did.

20 Q. And what did you find?

21 A. We found it to be a very good stable formulation.

22 Q. Is there stability data for this same composition in
23 the '865 patent?

24 A. For the same composition in terms of the excipients,
25 yes, there is. It's for a different lot of material.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Q. Do you recall which example in the '865 patent this
2 is?

3 A. So it's Stability Study 207, and I think it is
4 Example 3.

5 Q. And so as of September 30th, 2005, had you and your
6 coinventors made and tested the stability of the formulation
7 that eventually became the commercial Eylea formulation?

8 A. Yes, we did.

9 Q. Let's look at Example 1 of the '865 patent. You see
10 that on the screen, Doctor?

11 A. Yes, I do.

12 Q. Do you see that the formulation in Example 1 is
13 highlighted in yellow?

14 A. Yes, I do.

15 Q. What's the term VGFT-SS065 that's shown as part of
16 Example 1?

17 A. So that's our stability study number. The VGFT
18 identified the product. 065 is it's the 65th study we put up.

19 Q. Was there a protocol associated with this stability
20 study?

21 A. Yes, there was.

22 Q. Let's look at PTX 2292.
23 What's this document, Doctor?

24 A. It's one of Kelly Frye's notebooks.

25 Q. And are you familiar with that document?

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes, I am.

2 Q. How is it that you're familiar with this notebook?

3 A. I reviewed its contents when I joined the VEGF Trap
4 team.

5 Q. Let's turn to page 34 of the notebook.

6 What's shown on this page, Dr. Graham?

7 A. It says that the protocol for stability VEGF
8 Trap 065.

9 Q. And is there a date on this stability study protocol?

10 A. Yes, there is.

11 Q. Can you make out the date?

12 A. It was signed by Kelly on December 4th of 2003. I
13 can't make out the other signature.

14 Q. That's okay.

15 Let's look at the procedures section of this protocol
16 on page 34. What types of things were varied with respect to
17 the formulations studied in this stability study?

18 A. So a couple things. There were different buffers
19 used. We changed the concentration of sodium chloride. We
20 tested 50 and 100 millimolar. We tested polysorbate. We
21 tested PEG. We tested a couple of different concentrations of
22 sucrose.

23 Q. And what is Formulation Number 2 in this study?

24 A. Formulation Number 2 was a 50 mg/mL VEGF Trap
25 formulation with 10-millimolar phosphate, 50-millimolar sodium

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 chloride, .1 percent polysorbate 20, and 5 percent sucrose.

2 Q. Let's compare this formulation, Formulation Number 2
3 in Stability Study SS065, with the formulation in Example 1 of
4 the '865 patent.

5 Do you see those both on the screen?

6 A. Yes, I do.

7 Q. Can you confirm whether or not the same formulation
8 is used in both of these documents?

9 A. They're identical.

10 Q. Does this formulation have a buffer?

11 A. Yes, it does.

12 Q. What's that?

13 A. 10-millimolar phosphate.

14 Q. Does it have an organic cosolvent?

15 A. Yes, it does.

16 Q. What's that?

17 A. Polysorbate 20.

18 Q. Can that also be called a stabilizer?

19 A. Yes, it can.

20 Q. Does it also have a stabilizing agent?

21 A. That would be 5 percent sucrose.

22 Q. Is the VEGF Trap referenced here in these
23 formulations aflibercept?

24 A. It is.

25 Q. And what's the concentration of VEGF Trap in this

1 formulation?

2 A. 50 mg/mL.

3 Q. Did you do size-exclusion chromatography analysis on
4 this study?

5 A. Yes, we did.

6 Q. Let's look at PTX 1921.

7 Is this the SEC data for SS065?

8 A. Yes, it is.

9 Q. For Formulation Number 2 stored at 5 degrees C, what
10 was the starting percent native VEGF Trap percent?

11 A. It was 98.8 percent.

12 Q. And what was the value at three months stored at 5C?

13 A. 98.7 percent.

14 Q. And what about at six months?

15 A. 98.3 percent.

16 Q. What does that tell you about the percent native
17 conformation of this sample at two months at 5 degrees Celsius?

18 A. I would expect it to be greater than 98.7 percent.

19 Q. Why is that?

20 A. So when a protein aggregates, it's like rolling a
21 ball downhill. It goes -- the level of purity goes down. It
22 doesn't roll back up.

23 Q. Let's look at the bottom of this spreadsheet,
24 PTX 1921. Does this information tell you when the six-month
25 pull sample in Stability Study 065 was analyzed by SEC?

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 A. Yes, it does. It says it was May 24th, 2004.

2 Q. Let's look back up at the Formulation Number 2 in
3 this spreadsheet. Now, you've said that this formulation
4 involved aflibercept at 50 mg/mL, right?

5 A. Yes, it does.

6 Q. What did this tell you about the percent native
7 conformation of 40 mg/mL formulation of aflibercept stored at
8 5 degrees Celsius for two months?

9 MR. RAKOCZY: Objection, Your Honor. Again, the
10 witness has not been qualified as an expert.

11 MR. TRASK: Your Honor, if I may, this is data from
12 his group that he would -- he testified he routinely relied
13 upon in performing the studies that led to the claimed
14 invention, and he testified that he's run over 100,000
15 size-exclusion chromatography analyses during his time at
16 Regeneron. He has personal knowledge of this data and relied
17 upon it in the course of developing the inventions.

18 THE COURT: Understood.
19 Counsel.

20 MR. RAKOCZY: Your Honor, that didn't have anything
21 to do with my objection. My objection is -- let me back up.

22 I'm not objecting that this formulation tested a
23 50 mg/mL. That's the whole point. That's what this is. The
24 question was asking for an opinion on how does that bear on a
25 40 mg/mL, a different formulation. That's asking for an expert

1 opinion.

2 THE COURT: It is, Counsel. You need to reword that
3 question, please.

4 BY MR. TRASK:

5 Q. Okay. Doctor, what did you understand the percent
6 native conformation at 50 mg/mL reported in this table would
7 tell you about the percent native conformation of a 40 mg/mL
8 formulation of aflibercept at 5C for two months?

9 MR. RAKOCZY: Objection, Your Honor. It's the exact
10 same question.

11 THE COURT: It's not exact. It's close.

12 But I assume, Counsel, this is part of the work in
13 developing the ultimate formulation that results in the patent
14 at issue, correct?

15 MR. TRASK: Absolutely, Your Honor.

16 THE COURT: With that understanding, objection
17 overruled. Would you repeat your question, Counsel.

18 BY MR. TRASK:

19 Q. Dr. Graham, for the third time, I suppose, what did
20 you understand the percent native conformation at 50 mg/mL, as
21 reported in this data sheet, tell you about the percent native
22 conformation of a 40 mg/mL formulation of aflibercept stored at
23 5 degrees Celsius for two months?

24 A. Okay. So as the concentration of a formulation
25 increases -- at least as the concentration of aflibercept

1 formulation increases, generally the rate of -- the rate of
2 aggregation goes up. So it's more concentrated, more crowded,
3 faster aggregation.

4 If you got a rate at 50 mg/mL, you can predict
5 reliably that the rate at 40 mg/mL is going to be less in the
6 same formulation.

7 MR. RAKOCZY: Objection, Your Honor. Again, that's
8 pure expert opinion predicting what would and would not happen.
9 That's for the experts.

10 MR. TRASK: I disagree, Your Honor. He's a scientist
11 talking about the work he did leading to the inventions claimed
12 in that patent being asserted in the suit. This is routine
13 testimony at patent trials.

14 THE COURT: I don't believe the word "routine" shows
15 up in the rules of evidence, but I understand the background
16 involved here. Objection overruled.

17 BY MR. TRASK:

18 Q. Did you view the results of this study as promising,
19 Dr. Graham?

20 A. Yes.

21 Q. Let's turn to Example 3 of your '865 patent, Doctor.
22 You see Example 3 on the screen?

23 A. I do.

24 Q. You see the formulation used in this study is
25 highlighted in yellow?

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 A. Yes, it is.

2 Q. What is the term there, VGFT-SS207?

3 A. That is Stability Study 207, 207th study.

4 Q. That's another stability study you performed?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Let's look at PTX 1825, and I want to see page 85 of
7 this document.

8 Now, is this the protocol for Stability Study
9 VGFT-SS207?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. This stability study is part of a larger document
12 that was produced in this case, all of which appeared to relate
13 to SS207.

14 Is this how the documentation for stability studies
15 was kept in the ordinary course of Regeneron's business?

16 A. So yes, it was. We kept what was called a study
17 file, and that collected all the paper. We also kept lab
18 notebooks as well.

19 Q. Okay. Let's turn to page 92 of this exhibit. Is
20 this the approval page for the stability study we just
21 discussed?

22 A. Yes, it is.

23 Q. Is that your signature on the page, Doctor?

24 A. It is.

25 Q. What does this page indicate your role was with

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 respect to SS207?

2 A. It says that I was the study director.

3 Q. And what does the role of study director entail?

4 A. Well, that meant I was the responsible party. So I
5 had to ensure pulls were done as scheduled, make sure there was
6 staff assigned to do the analysis, do some of the analysis
7 myself, summarize the data, interpret the data, give readouts
8 to management in terms of what we had, prepare presentations.
9 Pretty much name it.

10 Q. And when did you sign this protocol, Dr. Graham?

11 A. On the 16th of January 2006.

12 Q. And so had you made the formulation that was tested
13 in SS207 prior to January 2006?

14 A. Yes. It actually was made the previous year, I think
15 in October of 2005.

16 Q. I'd like you to compare the formulation identified in
17 the study protocol for SS207 -- that's PTX 1825, page 85 --
18 with the formulation in Example 3 of the '865 patent. That's
19 PTX 2, page 8, Column 9.

20 Do you see those on the screen?

21 A. I do.

22 Q. Is the formulation that you studied in Stability
23 Study 207 the same as the one disclosed in Example 3 of the
24 '865 patent?

25 A. They're identical, yes.

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 Q. Does this formulation have a buffer?

2 A. Yes.

3 Q. What's that?

4 A. 10-millimolar phosphate.

5 Q. Does it have an organic cosolvent?

6 A. Yes, it does.

7 Q. What's that?

8 A. .03 percent polysorbate 20.

9 Q. Is there a stabilizing agent?

10 A. Yes, there is.

11 Q. What's that?

12 A. 5 percent sucrose.

13 Q. And the VEGF Trap here is aflibercept?

14 A. Yes, it is.

15 Q. And what's the concentration?

16 A. 40 mg/mL.

17 Q. Let's turn to Table 1 of the SS207 protocol. This is
18 PTX 1825 at page 86.

19 You see that table on the screen?

20 A. I do, yes.

21 Q. Did this study involve testing the formulation
22 stability in different containers?

23 A. It did.

24 Q. Was a glass vial one of those containers?

25 A. So the glass vial was what's listed as Device

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Number 7.

2 Q. Okay. Was there a pull schedule for this stability
3 study as well?

4 A. Absolutely.

5 Q. Let's look at that. Page 172 of PTX 1825.

6 Is this the pull schedule for SS207?

7 A. Yes, it is.

8 Q. What was the two-month pull date for this study?

9 A. March 21st of 2006.

10 Q. And so what does that mean? What happened on that
11 date?

12 A. So this is for a 5-degree C condition. That meant on
13 the 21st analysts went in, removed the samples from the
14 5-degree, and began performing the tests that were outlined in
15 the protocol.

16 Q. And was size-exclusion chromatography one of the
17 tests performed on these samples?

18 A. Yes, it was.

19 Q. Let's look at PTX 2277 at page 15. This is a
20 spreadsheet produced in native format.

21 Does the spreadsheet shown in this document report
22 the SEC data for the glass vial Device Number 7?

23 A. It does.

24 Q. What did the SEC data show after two months' storage
25 at 5C?

1 A. It showed that the percent native VEGF Trap is
2 99.18 percent or -- which rounds to 99.2 percent.

3 Q. What did that tell you about this formulation's
4 stability?

5 A. That it had good stability, yes.

6 Q. Let's look at the bottom of the same document.

7 Does this tell you when the size-exclusion
8 chromatography data was obtained for this sample at two months,
9 5 degrees Celsius in a glass vial?

10 A. Yes, it does.

11 Q. When was that?

12 A. So this is a different date format than what we had
13 been using earlier. We transitioned to going year-month-date;
14 so we had the whole list of things in the computer you could
15 find by year.

16 So 06 is 2006, 03 is March, and 20 is the 20th of
17 March.

18 Q. Was this the first time you'd made an aflibercept
19 formulation achieving at least 98 percent native conformation
20 after two months at 5C?

21 A. No, it wasn't.

22 Q. Had you done that sooner?

23 A. Yes.

24 Q. Did you analyze the stability in SS207 by more than
25 just size-exclusion chromatography?

1 A. We did.

2 Q. Let's look at PTX 2278, page 9.

3 What type of data do we have here, Doctor?

4 A. This is turbidity or OD at 405.

5 Q. Does the column on the right report when the
6 turbidity analysis was performed for the 5C two-month sample in
7 a glass vial?

8 A. The two-month samples were analyzed on March 21st of
9 2006.

10 Q. And what were the results reported here?

11 A. So for the glass vial, the value was -- is
12 negative .003, which is reported as 0.00.

13 Q. And what did that tell you about this formulation's
14 stability?

15 A. It was stable. It was not changing from the initial
16 state.

17 Q. Did you analyze the pH of the samples in this study
18 as well?

19 A. We did.

20 Q. Let's look at page 10 of this document, again,
21 PTX 2278. Is this pH data?

22 A. Yes, it is.

23 Q. Can you tell when the pH was measured at the
24 two-month time point for the sample stored at 5 degrees Celsius
25 in a glass vial?

1 A. March 21st of 2006.

2 Q. And is the pH result reported here a good one?

3 A. Yes, it is.

4 Q. What did it indicate to you about the stability of
5 the sample?

6 A. That the sample was stable.

7 Q. Let's turn back to the size-exclusion chromatography
8 data spreadsheet at PTX 2272. Now, you testified that there
9 was a two-month pull and a sample was analyzed at that time?

10 A. Yes.

11 Q. Was that the end of the study?

12 A. Oh, no.

13 Q. What happened?

14 A. So we wanted to understand how the formulation
15 performed at 5 degrees C over a number of years. So we
16 continued to pull samples monthly through six months. So we
17 had a three-, four-, five-, and six-month pull.

18 After that we pulled samples every three months,
19 which was 9, 12, 15, and 18. And then after 18 months, we went
20 every six months, which worked out to 24, about 31 months, and
21 then 36 months.

22 Q. And why were you testing the stability of this sample
23 at so many different time points?

24 A. So we were making decisions pretty much on the fly.
25 We had a lot of pressure to come up with what is going to go

1 into the clinic, go into the patient. We were getting early
2 reads, and we were trying to confirm that yes, our projections
3 are right. And if by some quirk of fate something went wrong,
4 we would know it immediately and be able to course correct.

5 Q. Thank you, Doctor. And just for the record, I think
6 I may have misspoken. If I said PTX 2272, I meant to say
7 PTX 2277, the exhibit we're looking at with this data.

8 Turning now, Doctor, to Example 5 of your '865
9 patent, do you see that on the screen?

10 A. I do.

11 Q. And do you see the formulation that was tested in
12 this example?

13 A. Yes, I do.

14 Q. And there's a term here "VGFT-SS203." Is that
15 another stability study you ran?

16 A. That was the 203rd stability study.

17 Q. Let's look at that one. This is PTX 1860. Is this
18 the protocol for SS203?

19 A. It looks like it's a pull schedule, actually.

20 Q. I'm sorry. It's a pull schedule. Thank you.

21 If we turn to page 122 of this document, is this the
22 stability study protocol for this study?

23 A. That's the first page of the stability study
24 protocol.

25 Q. And this again was produced as part of a larger

1 collection of documents relating to Stability Study 203. Is
2 this also how these documents were kept in the ordinary course?

3 A. Yes.

4 Q. Now, I'd like to -- I'd like for you to compare, if
5 you could, Doctor, the formulation investigated here in SS203,
6 page 122, of PTX 1860, with the formulation in Example 5 of the
7 '865 patent, PTX 2, page 8, Column 10.

8 Do you see those both on the screen?

9 A. I do.

10 Q. Are these the same formulations?

11 A. Yes, they are.

12 Q. Let's go back to the protocol, SS203. This is
13 PTX 1860, page 129. Is this the approvals page for the SS203
14 protocol?

15 A. Yes, it is.

16 Q. Is that your signature next to -- above study
17 director?

18 A. It is.

19 Q. Were you the study director for this?

20 A. Yes, I was.

21 Q. And when was this protocol approved?

22 A. The 19th of January 2006.

23 Q. All right. Let's turn back to the first page of the
24 protocol. This is page 122 of PTX 1860. What was the -- let's
25 turn to page 123, actually, with the Table 1 displayed.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 Was this a study that involved testing the
2 formulation in different containers?

3 A. It did.

4 Q. And were glass vials tested in this study?

5 A. Yes.

6 Q. Which device is that?

7 A. So it's Number 6.

8 Q. And if we look at page 8 of PTX 1860, what is this
9 document?

10 A. So this is the pull schedule for that study.

11 Q. And what does it tell you about the two-month 5C
12 sample pull date?

13 A. So it was scheduled to be pulled on the 12th of
14 February; and it actually was pulled on the 13th of February.

15 Q. Okay. And did you do size-exclusion chromatography
16 analysis in this study as well?

17 A. Yes, we did.

18 Q. Let's look at a spreadsheet marked as PTX 2238,
19 page 14. Is this the SEC data for the formulation in SS203
20 sorted 5C in a glass vial at different time points?

21 A. Yes, it is.

22 Q. What was the native conformation you found for the
23 vial at two months?

24 A. 99.2 percent.

25 Q. That's greater than 98 percent, of course?

1 A. Yes, it is.

2 Q. What did that tell you about the formulation's
3 stability?

4 A. That it had good stability.

5 Q. Let's look at the bottom of this page. Does this
6 document also tell you when the size-exclusion chromatography
7 test was run?

8 A. Yes, it does.

9 Q. What does it say?

10 A. So 06, year, so 2006; 02, February; 14, 14th.

11 Q. If we could turn to page 156 of PTX 1860, is this
12 more data from the Stability Study SS203?

13 A. Yes, it is.

14 Q. What's shown here?

15 A. So it's the osmolality of the formulation.

16 Q. And what osmolality is reported here, Doctor?

17 A. 287.

18 Q. And what units are those?

19 A. Milliosmoles.

20 Q. And so is the formulation that was analyzed in SS203
21 an isotonic formulation?

22 A. No, it's not.

23 Q. What's your understanding of what's isotonic?

24 A. 300, 320, that range.

25 Q. And you said earlier that the formulation in SS203 is

1 the same as the formulation reported in Example 5 of the '865
2 patent. Was that right?

3 A. Yes, it is.

4 Q. So what does that mean about the tonicity of the
5 formulation disclosed in Example 5 of the '865 patent?

6 A. So it's hypertonic, below iso-osmolar.

7 Q. Did you say hypo, H-Y-P-O?

8 A. H-Y-P-O.

9 Q. Now, I next would like to look at the disclosure of
10 your '865 patent, Dr. Graham. And I'd like to see if you can
11 confirm whether the data for the native conformation for the
12 stability studies we just reviewed are the same as the native
13 conformation data disclosed in the examples of your patent.
14 Okay?

15 A. Okay.

16 Q. Let's start by comparing the size-exclusion
17 chromatography data in Table 1 of your '865 patent -- this is
18 PTX 2, page 7, Column 8 -- with the SEC data from study SS065
19 for Formulation Number 2 at 5 degrees Celsius. This is
20 PTX 1921.

21 Do you see both of those on the screen?

22 A. I do.

23 Q. Do the SEC data in these two tables match?

24 A. They do.

25 Q. Next let's compare the SEC data in Table 3 of your

1 '865 patent -- this is PTX 2, page 8, Column 9 -- with the SEC
2 data from your SS207 study for the glass vial stored at 5C.

3 Do you see those?

4 This is PTX 2277, page 15.

5 A. I see it.

6 Q. Do you see those on the screen?

7 A. Yes, I do.

8 Q. So the SEC data in these two tables match?

9 A. They do when you appropriately round the values in
10 the spreadsheet.

11 Q. And can you explain how the rounding works.

12 A. Yeah. It's very straightforward. If it's .5, it
13 goes up; if it's .4, it goes down. So -- or .5 or greater, .4
14 or less. So if it's 98.49, that becomes 98.5.

15 Q. And next I would like to compare the size-exclusion
16 chromatography data from Table 5 of your '865 patent, PTX 2,
17 page 8, Column 10, with the SEC data from the SS203 study for
18 the glass vial at 5C. This is PTX 2238, page 14.

19 Do you see those on the screen?

20 A. Yes, I do.

21 Q. Do the SEC data in these two tables match?

22 A. Yes, they do.

23 Q. Okay.

24 Let's take that down, please.

25 Now, we've been looking at your issued '865 patent up

1 till now, right, Doctor?

2 A. Yes, we have.

3 Q. Were there earlier related patent filings that
4 preceded the '865 patent?

5 A. Yes, there were.

6 Q. And when did you first disclose the data in the '865
7 patent to the U.S. Patent Office?

8 A. We filed a provisional patent.

9 Q. And you testified earlier that you were involved in
10 the preparation of that provisional patent?

11 A. Yes.

12 Q. Is the data in the examples of your provisional
13 patent application the same as the data in the examples of the
14 '865 patent?

15 A. Yes, they are.

16 Q. Let's take a brief look at that.

17 Let's look at PTX 3249.

18 Do you recognize this document, Doctor?

19 A. This is the -- it looks like the title page for the
20 provisional filing.

21 Q. Okay. And let's compare a few of the examples and
22 data in your provisional application with the corresponding
23 examples and data in your '865 patent.

24 And before we do that, can we just zoom in on the
25 date on which this is filed on the bottom right.

1 Does this show when the provisional application was
2 filed, Doctor?

3 A. June 16th of 2006.

4 Q. Okay. Let's first look at Example 1 from your
5 provisional application, PTX 3249 at page 17, with Example 1
6 from your '865 patent. This is PTX 2, page 7, Column 8.

7 Do you see both of those on the screen?

8 A. Yes, I do.

9 Q. How do those examples and data compare?

10 A. They're identical.

11 Q. Next let's compare Example 3 from your provisional
12 application, PTX 3249, pages 18 to 19, with Example 3 of your
13 '865 patent, PTX 2, page 8, Column 9.

14 You've reviewed both of these previously, Doctor?

15 A. I have.

16 Q. How do these examples and data compare?

17 A. They're identical.

18 Q. Next let's look at Example 5 of your provisional
19 application, PTX 3249, pages 19 to 20, with Example 5 of your
20 '865 patent, PTX 2, page 8, Column 9.

21 You've reviewed both of these previously?

22 A. Yes, I have.

23 Q. How do these examples and data compare?

24 A. They're identical.

25 Q. So to sum up on this point, then, are the data in

KENNETH S. GRAHAM, PhD - DIRECT

1 examples -- in Examples 1, 3, and 5 of your '865 patent and
2 your provisional application the same as one another?

3 A. Yes, they are.

4 Q. And are those data also the same as the data that was
5 originally collected from your laboratory at Regeneron?

6 A. Yes, it is.

7 Q. Let's take a look at -- again at PTX 1825, page 172.

8 This is the pull schedule for Stability Study 207,
9 Doctor.

10 A. Okay.

11 Q. What is the two-month pull date for the 5C storage
12 condition?

13 A. March 21st, 2006.

14 Q. Of the various stability studies that you've
15 addressed during your testimony today, were any of the
16 two-month pull dates after March 21, 2006?

17 A. No.

18 Q. And so, Dr. Graham, in your view, had you conceived
19 of the inventions claimed in your '865 patent no later than
20 March 21, 2006?

21 A. Well, we first made it in September of 2005; but yes,
22 no later than March of 2006.

23 Q. Let's --

24 MR. RAKOCZY: Your Honor, I'd just again renew my
25 objection to make sure it's preserved.

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 THE COURT: No. Understood. Preserved from my
2 perspective, certainly, Counsel, and will be addressed
3 presumably in posttrial submissions and in the Court's final
4 order.

5 MR. RAKOCZY: Thank you, Your Honor.

6 MR. TRASK: And just to note, Your Honor, that's the
7 same date that was in our interrogatory response, March 2006.

8 THE COURT: Yes. Thank you.

9 BY MR. TRASK:

10 Q. Let's look at the examples in your '865 patent. So
11 here we've tried to show on the screen many of the examples
12 from your '865 patent. I know it's a little too small to read.
13 But we've been discussing Examples 1, 3, and 5 up to this
14 point, right?

15 A. Yes.

16 Q. Are all of those liquid formulations in vials in
17 Examples 1, 3, and 5?

18 A. 1, 3, and 5 are all liquid formulations in vials,
19 yes.

20 Q. Are there also examples in your patent that involve
21 prefilled syringes and lyophilized formulations?

22 A. Yes, there are.

23 Q. So for purposes of your invention involving liquid
24 formulations in vials, what's more relevant, the examples
25 involving prefilled syringes and lyophilization or Examples 1,

1 3, and 5?

2 A. So the most relevant is the examples in the vial.

3 Q. I'd also like you to compare, Doctor, the passage in
4 your '865 patent, PTX 2, at page 4, Column 2, lines 39 to 57,
5 with the passage in your provisional application at
6 paragraphs 7 and 8. This is PTX 3249 at page 11.

7 Do you see those two passages side by side on the
8 screen?

9 A. I do.

10 Q. Have you reviewed these passages previously?

11 A. Yes, I have.

12 Q. Can you confirm whether or not these two passages
13 convey the same information?

14 A. They do.

15 Q. All right. Let's turn back to your '865 patent once
16 more. Have you reviewed the section of your patent titled
17 "Related U.S. Application Data" on the face of the patent?

18 A. Yes, I did.

19 Q. Let's take a look at that in PTX 2.

20 Now, you are aware, of course, Doctor, that after
21 your provisional application was filed but before your '865
22 patent issued, there were nine intervening related patent
23 applications filed and issued naming you as an inventor?

24 A. Yes, I am.

25 Q. Have you reviewed each of those?

1 A. Yes. I did.

2 Q. Did you determine in your review of those documents
3 whether or not each of those patents contains the same
4 disclosure as in your '865 patent at Column 2, lines 39 to 57,
5 and Examples 1, 3, and 5?

6 A. All of them contain the same examples, the exact same
7 data. Those paragraphs, although they appear on different
8 pages sometimes in slightly different formatting, are all
9 identical with respect to the words.

10 Q. Thank you, Doctor.

11 Now, were the aflibercept formulations that are
12 reported in your '865 patent the only ones that you tested for
13 stability?

14 A. No.

15 Q. Okay. How many did you make and test, just ballpark?

16 A. 40.

17 Q. I'd like to look at just a couple of those.

18 First, when you varied the ingredients in your
19 formulations, did you ever try stabilizing agents other than
20 sucrose?

21 A. Yes.

22 Q. What did you try?

23 A. We tried -- mannitol was one.

24 Q. Okay. Let's look at your '865 patent, PTX 2, at
25 Column 2, lines 45 or thereabouts. What does this passage of

Cindy L. Knecht, RMR/CRR/CBC/CCP
PO Box 326 Wheeling, WV 26003 304.234.3968

1 the patent convey in part?

2 A. It says that you might want to use mannitol as a
3 stabilizing agent.

4 Q. And did you, in fact, do a stability study on a
5 formulation with mannitol as the stabilizing agent?

6 A. We did.

7 Q. Okay. Let's look at PTX 2281 at page 1. What is
8 this document, Doctor?

9 A. This is the 208th stability study protocol.

10 Q. And did you run this study?

11 A. I did.

12 Q. Let's turn to page 2 of this document. This is the
13 mannitol-containing formulation you just referenced?

14 A. Yes, it is.

15 Q. And on page 2, does this indicate whether or not a
16 glass vial was tested as the container?

17 A. Container Number 7 was a glass vial, yes.

18 Q. Let's compare the formulation of Example 3 from your
19 '865 patent, PTX 2, Column 9, with the formulation of SS208,
20 which is PTX 2281, page 1.

21 Do you see these on the screen?

22 A. I do.

23 Q. How do these two formulations compare?

24 A. They're identical.

25 Q. Is the stabilizing agent identical?

1 A. No. So the formulations are identical with respect
2 to every other component except one has sucrose and the other
3 has mannitol.

4 Q. Did this study involve testing the
5 mannitol-containing formulation by SEC?

6 A. Yes, it did.

7 Q. Let's look at PTX 2282 at page 14. Is this
8 spreadsheet the SEC data for SS208?

9 A. Yes, it is.

10 Q. And this is the glass vial at 5C?

11 A. Yes, it is.

12 Q. What was the percent native conformation as measured
13 by size-exclusion chromatography at 5C, two months' storage in
14 a glass vial?

15 A. 99.05.

16 Q. And is that -- that's greater than 98 percent?

17 A. Yes, it is.

18 Q. Did you do turbidity on this formulation as well?

19 A. Yes, we did.

20 Q. Let's look at PTX 2283, page 12.

21 What is this document?

22 A. So this is the data that was collected for turbidity
23 or optical density at 405.

24 Q. And what does it show for the turbidity of the
25 mannitol-containing formulation following storage at 5C for two